the Burning Wheel

by Luke Crane

extra rotam nulla salus
Credit Due

Burning Wheel Concept, Design and Production
Luke Crane

Original Concept
Luke Crane and Dan Abram

Tough Love, Hard Feedback and Editing
Pete Tierney, Dan Abram, Ian Marshall, Sean Bosker and John Yohalem

Game Development

Action Reaction, Melee and Martial Arts Mechanics Development Help
Ian Marshall

Folios, Section Headers and Graphics
The Inimitable Dan Licht

Illustrations
Dan Licht [ù], Kev Sather [ù], Kira Brooks [ù].

Cover Illustrations
Wood: Dan Licht [ù], Wheel: Kev Sather [ù], Back cover painting: Jin Kwan

Constant Input, Support, Questions, Insight and Criticism
Dan Abram, Chris Allingham, Rick Brown, Eric Cardon, Jason Costa, Danny Dempsey, Bob Doherty, Phil Kobel, Ian Marshall, Jami Rodgers, Rich Soto, Erin Strumpf, Shy Theerakulstit, and especially Pete Tierney; what would we do without AIM? :-(.

Thank You: Chris for telling me to just start writing; Thanks to Bob for getting this all started (and for finishing it). A special acknowledgement goes to the Kingmakers: Gentlemen, if it weren’t for you the Wheel would have never made it this far—thanks for your patience and tenacity. And a heartfelt thank you to the Last Dancers, the original inspiration: Jesse, Brian, Bob, Jason, Jon and Pete. Your brilliant fuel drove me along, this one’s for you.

luke
autumn.02
N Y C

This game is fondly dedicated to my brother, Hart.

There is no greater joy than gaming with your little brother except playing your own game with your little brother... and having him get it.

thanks, bro.


Contact: abzu@burningwheel.org

Contents

Introduction

Von Goten’s Story Part II .........................................................10

Nature of the Game .................................................................13

Voices in My Head ...........................................................................14

Dice and the Wheel ..................................................................15

Paper and Pencils. Not Pens. ...........................................................15

Dice Rules ........................................................................................15

When Do I Roll Dice? ......................................................................16

How Many Successes is “Success”?...................................................17

General Guidelines for Judging Obstacles ....................................18

How Many Dice Do I Roll? .............................................................18

Shade ..............................................................................................18

Elements of the Game .............................................................19

Characters, Equipment, Materials and Magic ..................................19

The Elements of Character ..............................................................20

The Rest of the Elements .................................................................24

Gameplay

Using Your Abilities .................................................................26

Rolling Dice for Stats and Skills ......................................................26

The When and Why of Stats ...........................................................27

When Do I Use Skills? .....................................................................28

Obstacles and the Real World, .........................................................28

I Can Do That Without Trying .........................................................32

Using Attributes ...............................................................................32

Tests for Skills and Stats ..............................................................37

Three Kinds of Tests .................................................................37

Testing Skills ..................................................................................38

What if I Don’t Have the Skills? aka Beginner’s Luck ......................39

Time and Tests ................................................................................40

Failing Tests ....................................................................................40

How Long Do Tests Count for? .........................................................44

Fun Skill Stuff ..............................................................................46

Helping Out .....................................................................................46

Fields of Related Knowledge: FoRK .................................................47

Following Directions ......................................................................48

Training Skills .................................................................................49
Introduction

...Need alone is not enough to set power free; there must be knowledge.

—Ursula LeGuin
Foul Orc!" Von Goten hissed to himself in alarm. “Trouble. Very bad trouble,” he searched the darkness for his attacker and edged closer to his sputtering lantern. A shadow crossed the light, two glowing coals within it fixed his gaze. But before he could judge its attitude the inky form lunged out of the darkness and tackled him about the waist. Water sluiced around his feet and his steel spurs slid across the slick cobblestones, yet the squire kept his feet. “Thanks be,” he muttered to himself, well aware of his dimming fate and small good fortune.

Then as he grappled with this new shadow, his first assailant careered out of the darkness and ploughed headlong into him as well. The blasted devils weren’t hindered in the least by the night. Fortunately, the redoubtable soldier had his feet under him and he held his ground. The loathsome Orcs kicked and bit, trying desperately to drag him off, so that they might overpower him and slit his throat. A knife rebounded from his shoulder guard. Von Goten blindly grabbed one of the Orcs and heaved him down. The squire could barely pry him loose. The beast was wiry and starved, but with a tenacious and feral disposition.

One Orc was off, but the other fought on. A clawed hand clamped onto the neckward rim of Von Goten’s breastplate and yanked hard. He wrestled with the goblin, warding off its blackened knife, as the other Orc regained his feet.

Hands and arms interlocked, Von Goten and the leathery goblin grappled. Using his superior weight to his advantage, the squire managed to pin his adversary—once he had the Orc’s knife tied up, he took the opportunity to draw his own.

Before he could bring the weapon to bear, his legs were kicked out from under him. Hit from behind, Von Goten slipped, staggered, and fell. Wicked visions flashed before his benighted eyes: The memory of his cousin, a goodly knight, pulled down by Orcs and slain through his visor; the fortress captured and burning; a black flag draped on the altar of Tudemlin.

The two jackals were on him, scrabbling and clawing their way toward his end. He cursed to himself; if he hadn’t removed his helmet…. Now was not the time for regret though! He rolled onto his back and flailed his arms free so he could shield his face from the hungry knives of the ferocious Orcs. Much to his surprise, Von Goten had managed to keep hold of his own dirk when he fell.

In the light of his watch-lantern, the dim forms of his assailants resolved; their coal-red eyes, yellowed teeth and oily hair. Desperate, he lashed out with his blade at these very eyes and found purchase. As soon as his knife bit home he reached out with...
Nature of the Game

Like the old grand-daddy RPG, *Dungeons and Dragons*, Burning Wheel is nothing more than a template—a trellis for the vines of imagination to grow on. But unlike its predecessors, this system is versatile and powerful; it can handle any fantastic situation with consistency and accuracy. The precise story is left open to the players to bring to the game, but whatever that story is, this system can handle it.

Gaming has always been more than a pastime to me; I choose to view it with an artist’s eyes. Burning Wheel is the cathartic product of that passion—a channeling of energy and personal philosophy into a tangible form—a seed if you will. There are myriad other roleplaying games out there. This one is merely my contribution to the field, but I think I have come up with a game that is quite different, enjoyable, challenging, and, most importantly, fun to play.

My philosophy, a little ardor, and a lot of mania, drove me to build this system. If it’s not entirely unique, at the very least it has a different perspective. Without being hokey or gimmicky, the system attempts to create an accurate portrayal of the model that inspired all of these games, epic fiction.

Initially my mission was only to build the proverbial “better system,” but my true motive emerged as the system took root. I wanted to construct a game that could create better stories—something closer to the thrilling narratives that we all grew up on and that still grip our imaginations. So accordingly, I designed a game to fully encompass and exemplify story-arcs, whether they be heroic epics or down-and-dirty tales. And I incorporated details to foster character development and dramatic battles—elements that I, as a die-hard gamer, crave. With this game, we can get in on the action of everything we have watched, read and dreamed about—and finally get to the heart of what we love so much.

The introduction is no place to convince you, though. To know a game you have to play it. So, try it. I dare you; plant the seed and let it grow, and then you’ll see.
Burning Wheel (BW) is a pencil, paper and dice fantasy roleplaying game. The pencil and paper are to keep track of the endless numbers, lists and stuff that come along with these games. The dice play the role of fate. They randomize results and determine the outcome of uncertain situations.


The paper that players use consists of the two character sheets (found at the back of the Character Burner), a Reflexes Script sheet, and a few sheets of note paper. I recommend a standard-weight #2 pencil for your writing needs. Why not a pen? Because in the course of the game, lots of stuff is changed or removed from the character sheet and white-out really starts to cake up.

Dice Rules

Dice used in Burning Wheel are standard six-sided dice. No other funny dice are used. I know dodecahedrons are fun to roll, but they create ridiculous odds curves and do all sorts of wacky things to the game (that are no fun for anyone in the end). So we just use six-sided dice. Strange thing about those little cubes, you get enough of them together and they generate great odds. About 10 dice will do, and it is best to keep a couple of odd-colored dice for special rolls.

Six-sided dice are treated very specially in BW. Each one is separate and unique, and loves to be loved. (Love them or they will torment you.) Every time you roll a handful of dice, each die is counted as a separate, individual result. You never add your dice together in BW. Thus when you roll five dice, you are going to get five individual results that tell you how you did.

Difficulty Number

The number that you want to roll on each die is called the Difficulty Number or DN, for short. So if you see “DN 4,” you know that the dice must come up 4s or better to get “successes.” Right now, assume all DNs are 4.

Successes

In the basic game, every die that meets its DN—comes up a 4 or higher—is a success. Each die that comes up a 3 or lower is a missed success, failure or traitor as we like to call them.
So, when there is a chance that your character could succeed or fail at a task, you test his ability—dice are rolled for the appropriate ability. The outcome of that roll determines where the story is going next.

Your party is hosting delicate negotiations with a clan of very touchy bandits. It’s your job to cook for the event. Did you fail that Cooking test? Well, bad cooking is an insult to your guests. Negotiations end in a disgusted huff and your guests leave shaking their fists; they will not stand for such contemptuous treatment. They will have their revenge!

See how a simple skill can affect the course of the story? If you had cooked a good meal, then perhaps the bandits would have been receptive to your offers and agreed to help the party in some way.

How Many Successes is “Success”? or What’s My Obstacle?

The “number of successes needed” is called the obstacle of the test. We usually just call it Ob, for short. (Some folks like to refer to the obstacle as: “The way the Game Master screws the players.”)

If the obstacle of the test is 3, you need three of the dice rolled to come up 4s or higher—three successes passes the test. So if you roll five dice against Ob 3 and they come up: 2, 3, 4, 4, 6—three successes passes the test.

If you roll five dice against Ob 3 and they come up: 1, 3, 3, 4, 5—that is only two successes and not enough to pass the test.

When you see a notation like “Ob 4,” that is shorthand for Obstacle 4. Also, you will occasionally see notations like +1 Ob. This indicates that there is a modifier to the obstacle of the test. A “+” means the test is more difficult, a “−” means the test is easier. For example, using “poor quality tools” is a +1 Ob to your Carpentry skill test.
Introduction

General Guidelines for Judging Obstacles

Use the Following Guidelines for All Abilities:

- An Easy Task is ................. Obstacle 1. Anyone can do it.
- A Routine Task is ............... Obstacle 2. You do it every day.
- A Difficult Task is .............. Obstacle 3. Hard, but not impossible.
- An Extremely Difficult Task... Obstacle 4. Only masters can do this easily.
- A Master-level Task is .......... Obstacle 5. Only masters can hope to do this at all.
- A Heroic Task is ................ Obstacle 6. Yep.
- A Ludicrous Task is ............. Obstacle 7. Ah, yep.
- An Impossible Task is ......... Obstacle 8. Uh huh.

It doesn’t matter what a character’s ability rating is. What matters is the inherent difficulty of the task at hand. For example, whether a character has an “2” Sword skill or a “4” Sword skill, it is an Ob 1 Sword test to hit a stationary opponent; Striking a moving opponent is an Ob 2 Sword test. Making horseshoes is an Ob 1 Blacksmithing test; Forging stirrups is an Ob 2 test. It doesn’t matter if a character has a “3” or a “5” Blacksmithing skill.

How Many Dice Do I Roll?

Exponent

Every character is broken down into a series of abilities: stats, skills and attributes. These are rated with numbers called exponents. The exponent tells how many dice to roll when testing that ability, whether it is a stat, skill or attribute.

Shade

There is a second component to stats, skills and attributes—a box that precedes the number. It is called the shade and indicates the level of potential for a particular ability. For now, assume everyone has the same shade, or potential—Black/mundane shade; we will talk more about different levels of potential later. As you read on, you will see stats, skills and attributes written like “B3” or “G6.” The preceding letter indicates the shade, the number is the exponent.

Elements of the Game

Characters, Equipment, Materials and Magic

All aspects of the world of the game come down to these four categories: Characters, Equipment, Materials and Magic.

Character

Character refers to any person or being in the game. It doesn’t matter if they are a player’s character, or a GM-controlled character, an animal or a badguy. They are the same under the rules. Everything else in the game is either a tool for the characters to use or an impediment to hinder them.

The mechanics of characters are discussed in greater detail in the Using Your Abilities and Using Traits sections. The character’s relationship to the world at large is also detailed in Fun Skill Stuff, Action Reaction, Melee Mechanics and The Anatomy of Injury. The Character Burner details the system for creating characters for Burning Wheel.

Equipment

Equipment is the fun stuff that every player loves (loves too much, if you ask me.) It is the tools of the character used to get tasks done: weapons, armor, clothes, books and so forth. More often than not, for a character to perform her role adequately, she will require bits of specialized equipment, such as swords, bows, hammers, anvils, laboratories and potter’s wheels.

For the most part equipment is detailed in the Weapons Mechanics section and the Armor and Shields section. The General Skills List in the Character Burner also notes what skills require equipment in order to be effective. (The Character Burner also shows how to start your character with that equipment.)

Materials

Most of the time materials don’t come into play; they are just window dressing for the setting—the stuff that the characters navigate around. However, sometimes this can play an important role: Rock walls, wooden houses, a forest of trees or the earth’s crust. In case the characters should ever have to remove such roadblocks, these materials have been given ratings in this system that determine how durable and resilient they are.
The Scale of the Numbers: Exponent

The nominal scale for exponent ratings is from 1-10. 1 being the lowest possible exponent (number/rating) you can have for a stat, skill or attribute; 10 being the highest. However, don’t start getting all drooly thinking about how your big, bad knight absolutely needs to have a 10 for his Power stat. That is not how it works. That 1-10 range has to encompass knights, Elves, Ores, ogres, giants and dragons. It’s really a pretty small scale. Judged from our little old “human perspective” the numbers read like this: 1 is feeble; 2 is slow, and weak; 3 is about average; 4 is the solid average; 5 is expert; 6 is master level; 7 is grand master; 8 is right out; 9 and 10? Forget it, the top tiers are for giants, dragons and demons only. See? So humans hover around 3 and 4, bad ass humans cling to their 5s and 6s, Elves swim in the seas of 6 and 7, etc. Thus what your big, bad knight needs is a Power of 5, a Forte of 5 and a Sword skill of 5—Expert and proficient in all the necessary areas.

This scale stands for stats, skills and attributes.

The whole system has been designed with humans in mind; humans set the average for the scale. Let’s face it, most fantasy is told from a “human” perspective. That perspective is the most intuitive, the easiest way for the reader to be involved in the story. This doesn’t mean that I have neglected the other denizens of the fantasy world—far from it. But, we all know what it means when I say “an average strength human.” What is “an average strength Orc”? I don’t intuitively know, I have to think about it.

Shade: What is that Box Next to My Stats and Skills for?

Shade is the indicator of potential for a stat, skill or attribute. In the game mechanics, the shade of an ability determines its DN; the number each die needs to roll in order to be a success.

Shades are judged on a grayscale, black at the extreme left, gray in the center, and white at the extreme right. The left end of the scale is for people like us, the middle is for heroes and their enemies and the right end of the scale is for dragons, demons and gods.

For now, in order to keep things simple, we are going to assume that all abilities are mundane potential (Black shade).

The two shades beyond mundane; heroic (Gray shade) and supernatural (White shade), use a lower DN for the ability they are attached to. Thus you might have a heroic G5 skill, rather than mundane B5. Instead of needing 4s to get successes, you would need 3s on each die. Even worse, supernatural shade abilities only...
need 2s for successes. See the Heroic and Supernatural section in Expanded Gameplay for more on shades.

Below is an example of how skills, shades and exponents are noted on the character sheet. A B4 Carpentry skill:

\[
\text{shade} \vcenter{\hbox{\includegraphics[width=1cm]{carpentry}}}_4^{+}\text{exponent}
\]

**Stats**

Stats are the raw abilities of characters. All living things in Burning Wheel have them. These numbers tell how mentally adept, physically quick, and physically tough the character is. There are six stats: Perception, Will, Agility, Speed, Power and Forte. (Pronounced: “fort.”)

Perception determines how aware the character is of his surroundings. It is used to search, when looking for clues or hunting for hidden enemies, Will is the mental strength and empathy of the character. Also, Will is the social stat, it can be used to bend wills. Agility is the hand-eye coordination of the character. It is used when you need to quickly jam a key in a lock or throw a ball at a target. Speed is the movement stat—body control and metabolism rolled into one. It determines how fast you walk and how well you dive through windows. Power indicates how well the character uses his physical strength. Forte represents the physical endurance of the character. It isn’t often rolled in the game, but it is very important nonetheless. Forte weighs heavily in factoring important attributes like Health and Mortal Wound.

Stats are also the basis of all skills. Each stat has a set of skills that grow from it. This is called the roots system. All skills are listed with their roots in the Character Burner Skill List.

**Attributes**

**Reflexes, Health, Faith, Steel, Aptitude and Mortal Wound.** Attributes are additional characteristics that are inherent to every character, but are a bit more complex than basic stats. Reflexes and Mortal Wound are benchmarks that tell, respectively, how quickly a character reacts when the fur flies, and what it takes to cut a character down. Health determines how quickly the character recovers from injury. Steel dice represent the character’s nerves. When things get hairy, does she run? Or does she steel herself and carry on? Aptitude determines how quickly a character learns new skills. Lastly, Faith—which is open to every character, but not every character starts with it—represents the character’s connection to the divine and her ability to enact miracles via that connection.

See the Character Burner for more on attributes.

**Skills**

Skills are specific fields of knowledge; however, they are not too specialized. “Sword” is a good example of this. I could have made a general “Armed Combat” skill, but I felt it was unspecific. To me, the style of use of spear and sword were sufficiently different that they merited individual skills. On the other hand, I also could have easily broken the sword down into its myriad sub-categories: small sword, bastard sword, katana, scimitar and yataghan skills. But that seemed a little too specific (and ridiculous). It seems to me that a trained swordsman can pick up any of those weapons and have a fair idea how to use it to lop off his opponent’s head. And, really, who wants their character sheet filled up with lots of minute variations of the same skill? Not me.

You might have noticed that there is no Intelligence or Charisma stat in Burning Wheel. Nope. In this game your skills determine how smart you are. And your ability to convince-someone-to-do-something-for-you-because-they-think-you-are-really-neat is a skill.

**Roots of Skills**

Every skill is based on a stat; this is called its root. The root determines the starting shade and exponent of every skill. All stats can be roots: Perception, Will, Agility, Speed, Power, Forte or an average of two of them. After they are learned at their root, skills quickly take on a life of their own and tend to rise much higher and faster than a character’s stats.

Typically, characters have many skills. This represents the various things a character has learned as they have journeyed through life: reading, writing, history, staying unnoticed in a crowd, brawling, persuading people, cooking, seducing someone, bargaining for a better price, fixing things...there are tons of skills.

Characters are never stereotyped into a corner. They can never “not be able to learn” something. If your wizard wants to learn how to fight with a sword, all he has to do is pick it up and start practicing. (Ok, the reverse isn’t necessarily true for folks who want to become wizards. If you want to throw lightning bolts you have to have a special trait. But that is an exception. You could still learn Sorcery, you just couldn’t cast any spells!)
Beyond Numbers: Traits, Instincts and Beliefs

There are three more elements to the character beyond the numbers of rated abilities.

Traits are personality quirks, physical aberrations or just plain weird stuff that your character has—they can be good and bad. Instincts are a list of three of your character’s gut reactions. They can be as simple as: “If someone shoots an arrow at me, I duck for cover.” Or as complex as: “When someone throws something at me, I catch it and throw it back—at least I try to.” Beliefs are a chance for you to expand on your character’s personality. They are three things that your character believes in passionately. Beliefs can be anything from “God and Country” or “My dog is my best friend” to “All wizards are heretics and should be burned at the stake.” They create a general sense of how a person would and should react to a certain situation. It doesn’t mean they always do what’s in their Beliefs, but that at the very least they are constantly fighting an internal struggle to do what they think is right.

Acquiring traits, Instincts and Beliefs is discussed in the Character Burner. Using them is discussed under Using Traits, Instincts and Beliefs in the Gameplay section of this book.

The Rest of the Elements

The details of Magic, Materials and Equipment aren’t nearly as important as the Elements of Character. In fact, it is necessary to understand the basics of the game and its characters before you can really understand where the other elements fall. So read on, immerse yourself in the die mechanics of the character, and everything will fall into place as you learn.
Using Your Abilities

This section discusses the die mechanics for your stats, skills, and attributes.

Rolling Dice for Stats and Skills

A brief refresher: The exponent next to stats, skills, and attributes tells how many dice you roll when testing that ability. The shade of the box next to the number tells you what number you need on each die for it to count—for it to be a success. The obstacle of a test is the number of successes needed from the stat or skill roll to pass.

A fleeing sneak-thief has a B4 Speed and wants to leap over a swift stream to elude her pursuers. The GM sets the obstacle for the leap at 2. She rolls four dice (her Speed exponent), each one that comes up a 4 or better is a success (DN 4). She needs two successes to pass the test and leap over the stream (Ob 2).

Open-Ended Dice

When a test is indicated as “open-ended,” players are allowed to reroll dice that come up as 6s. The rerolled dice count as if they were additional dice for the stat, skill, or attribute test—they can generate additional successes for the roll. Rerolled dice are not added onto the 6. If the reroll results in another 6, the player may count that as a success and roll again, and so on.

Von Goten’s out in the rainy dark. He needs to test his Perception to notice the approaching Orcs. Four dice are rolled, coming up 6, 3, 3, 2—1 success. However, the 6 is open-ended, so another die is thrown. The rerolled 6 comes up a 4—another success, for a total of two. Still not enough to see the lurking goblins.

When rolling open-ended 6s do not use the dice that came up successes. Leave those on the table and use the failed dice or additional dice to roll your open-ends. Doing this allows the GM to see exactly how many successes were rolled.

Perception tests, Steel tests, Faith tests, spell-casting, and Artha Luck are all examples of open-ended dice.

The When and Why of Stats

Perception, Will, Agility, Speed, Power, and Forte: These stats represent the physical (and mental) body of the character in the game world. So, technically, they are always in use. Every time the character walks, sits, stands, or talks, the little stat muscles are pumping away.

But those are all aspects of the game that are behind the scenes, stuff that is just assumed to happen without interference of dice or GMs. When do you roll the dice for your stats? Should you roll your Will to see if you wake up in the morning? Should you roll your Forte to see if you can skip a meal? Should you roll your Speed every time you mount the stairs of the throne room? No, No and No. Those are simple acts which don’t really require our interference (unless there are extenuating circumstances). Were you drugged in your sleep and your companions are trying to rouse you? That is an appropriate time to test Will.

Players test character’s stats when a situation arises where the character has to perform a function important to the game and story that isn’t (or doesn’t absolutely have to be) governed by a Skill.

A character sneaks into a bandit camp using her Stealthy skill. When she reaches to grab the satchel the GM could, by rights, call for the player to pass an Agility test (hand-eye coordination) to ensure that she doesn’t drop the satchel or get the straps hung up on branches and thereby draw attention to herself. The bandits sitting around the campfire are entitled to a Perception test to see if they notice that satchel disappearing. Although, it would be a high obstacle Perception test, because the bandits think they are safe—they have sentries on duty—and are engrossed in their card game. Even so, they are entitled to a chance to notice.

Let’s say that upon her exit our sneak-thief is spotted by a sentry who gives chase. He made a successful Perception test vs her Stealthy successes. The sentry gives a warning shout and dashes after her. Sprinting away, she wants to leap a stream to get to safety: Speed test. If she makes it, she will be safe on the other side. The bandit, if he wishes to pursue, must also make a Speed test to get quickly across. If he fails, then he is delayed as he plunges into the swift stream.
In this case, the bandit and our heroine both make the leap and the chase continues through the night-black forest. Branches snatch at loose clothing, leaves hiss and chatter underfoot, as the two breathlessly dash through the undergrowth. Our satchel-stealer tries to shake her pursuer. She ducks round a tree and quietly doubles back. That is a skill test on her part, for Stealthy; the bandit is entitled to a Perception test to see if he notices. Senses sharpened by adrenaline the bandit easily notices the simple trick and charges right for her. Seeing that her ploy failed, she sprint off again. The chase is on, the bandit is close, a hounding shadow in the inky dark. They run for minute ages. Speed tests are taken to see if one can gain ground on the other. Neither does. Hearts pound and lungs labor, legs turn leaden with exertion. Both are obliged to make Forte tests to see if they can maintain their breakneck pace. She passes and the bandit fails miserably. Panting and gasping, he stumbles to a halt and falls to his knees wheezing. Our satchel-stealing heroine careens off into the night, thankful that her luck held.

When Do I Use Skills?

Characters use skills in situations where it is hard to succeed without some specialized training and practice—such as making a porcelain bowl. If GMs are at a loss as to whether a test should be rolled against skills or stats use this guideline—if you are using more than one stat to accomplish a test than there should probably be a skill involved. For example to build a chair: GM: “Ok roll your Perception, now roll your Agility, now roll your Power…” Instead of all those needless stat tests, the character should be testing one skill, Carpentry.

Obstacles and the Real World, or What’s My Obstacle to Run Up the Stairs?

This is a list of general (and sometimes silly) obstacles given to create a feel for how Burning Wheel “sees” the world. Use these to get a sense of what is hard and what is not, so that you can start judging your own obstacles when the time arises. It is nearly impossible to plan out what every obstacle will be in the course of an adventure, but by understanding the basics, a GM and players can fairly judge the difficulty of tasks and the likelihood of successfully completing them.

Obstacles are not relative! Do not make an obstacle higher just because a character has a higher skill. That completely defeats the purpose of the system. Simple acts can be bungled by normal people, but they are easy for “master-level” folks. Seemingly impossible tasks are, well, near impossible for your average folks, but quite achievable for the highly skilled. When a player asks if his character can “do” something, try not to say flat out “No.” Instead, think about it a moment and set an obstacle for the task. The fact may be that the obstacle far outstrips the character’s abilities and the player will realize it is a foolish endeavor. Or it will create an opportunity for the character to attempt something heroic and daring…and let fate decide the situation.

Ultimately, the obstacle for a test is up to the GM. Quit complaining.

Using Perception in the Game

Characters are assumed to be able see and hear on their own just fine. Even so, they will be called on to roll their Perception constantly. Perception is a filter that indicates what the character understands about their environment. For example, a swordsman is greeted on the street by an inquiring official. A successful Perception test would determine if he notices that the minister is wearing a small sword concealed beneath his tunic.

Perception is used to see Stealthy and Inconspicuous characters. Also, Perception is used to see through Sleight of Hand and detect traps.

Sample Perception Obstacles

| Noticing something obvious (like a piece of furniture) in a room: | Ob 1 |
| Recognizing a friend: | Ob 1 |
| Noticing something poorly hidden (under the bed): | Ob 2 |
| Spoting a moth on a tree from 10’ away: | Ob 3 |
| Determining the source of a sound in an echoing cave: | Ob 4 |

Using Will

Will isn’t often tested during the course of the game. Usually it stands as an obstacle for other characters to roll against, such as for social skills like Persuasion. Will is the root stat of the various social skills.

Sample Will Obstacles

| Not peeing your pants when you really have to go: | Ob 1 |
| Not peeing your pants when you are drunk and really have to go: | Ob 2 |
| The patience and understanding required to read these rules: | Ob 3 |
| To stop smoking cold turkey: | Ob 4 |
Using Agility

Agility represents the character’s hand-eye coordination. It is the root for most combat-oriented skills. But it is also used for throwing, catching and snatching.

Sample Agility Obstacles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Obstacle</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drawing your sword</td>
<td>Ob 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a fork and getting it all in your mouth</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key in lock</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching an easy toss</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing your sword while dashing/jogging</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching a fast throw</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing a ball and hitting a target 10 paces away</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key in lock quickly</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching a fly</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing your sword while sprinting</td>
<td>Ob 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching a fly with chopsticks</td>
<td>Ob 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grabbing a pen out of someone’s hand</td>
<td>Ob equal to Agility of target</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using Speed

Speed is used for body control tests like jumping through windows or climbing trees. It is also used to determine the “movement rate” of the character.

Sample Speed Obstacles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Obstacle</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walking up stairs</td>
<td>Ob 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jogging up stairs</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping off the curb</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carefully climbing over a low fence</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinting up stairs</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping over a ditch</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running jump over a low fence</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safely jumping down one story</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping through a small, open window</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safely jumping down two stories</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safely jumping down three stories</td>
<td>Ob 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running jump over the moat</td>
<td>Ob 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World record long jump</td>
<td>Ob 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winning a race</td>
<td>Speed versus Speed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Moving in Burning Wheel

In addition to allowing characters to perform graceful leaps and dives, Speed also governs how quickly a character moves. There are three modes of movement in the game: walking, jogging and sprinting.

Movement is thoroughly detailed in the Action Reaction section, but suffice it to say someone with a B2 Speed walks very slowly and can’t run worth a damn. While a character with a B6 Speed is exceptionally fast on his feet and can sprint very quickly.

Using Power

Power is tested when characters are lifting, hauling, pushing or pulling. It is used in other capacities where it is not rolled, rather it tells “how much.” In melee combat, it determines “how much” damage; for throwing things around, it determines “how far.”

Sample Power Obstacles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Obstacle</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Taking candy from a baby</td>
<td>Ob 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting two corners of the couch</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flipping the small dining room table</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dragging a full grown man</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireman's carry a full grown man</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flipping over the food-laden heavy wooden dining room table</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing the television across the room</td>
<td>Ob 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting the couch over your head</td>
<td>Ob 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrying the refrigerator</td>
<td>Ob 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving pianos</td>
<td>Ob 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some obstacles are really too high for anyone but the most heroically strong characters to accomplish by themselves. That is because you are supposed to get help, either from your friends or in the form of rope, winches and dollies.

Also, notice there are no Power obstacles listed for punching through walls or hacking down doors with an axe. Obstacles for smashing and breaking things aren’t so cut and dried as the simple acts detailed above. They actually have their own system under the Materials section in the Appendix.

Using Forte

Forte is very rarely tested in the course of the game. However, like Power, it is an underpinning stat that is always in use. Forte determines a character’s Mortal Wound and Health attributes, two very important parts of the character!

Sample Forte Obstacles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Obstacle</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holding your breath for 60 seconds</td>
<td>Ob 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holding your breath for 120 seconds</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holding your breath for 180 seconds</td>
<td>Ob 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jogging a mile</td>
<td>Ob 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Health is tested when recovering from injury. This process is meticulously detailed in the Post Trauma section.

**Notes on Health Tests**

Health tests are never modified by the effects of wounds.

**Steel**

Do you flinch when you are wounded? Are you stunned when witnessing a brutal melee? Do you cower at the sight of *speakable* horrors? Steel is the measure of the character’s nerves.

**Steel Tests**

When a character encounters the unexpected or something shocking, the GM may call for a Steel test. Players test Steel against a base obstacle equal to their character’s Hesitation.

**Hesitation**

All characters have a “Base Hesitation” that is equal to 10 minus the character’s Will exponent. Thus a character with a Will of B4 has a Base Hesitation of 6.

This is the number of actions (See Action Reaction) that the character might hesitate if he fails his Steel test. Subtract Steel test successes from the character’s base Hesitation. The final result is the number of actions the character spends hesitating.

A character with a Hesitation of 6 gets two successes on his Steel test. He will spend the next 4 actions hesitating.

Failing Steel Tests: “I just stood there…”

A character who fails his Steel test immediately stops what he is doing and momentarily loses control of his faculties. During the actions spent hesitating, players may have their characters do one of the following:

- **Stand and Drool.** Characters stand their ground, blink a bit and drool a little. They may not act or defend themselves in any way. They may not move; they may not speak.

- **Fall Prone.** Characters may fall face forward and fling their arms over their heads to protect themselves. They immediately hit the ground—it only costs one action. They may not act or defend themselves in any way. They may...
success; three successes all together, not enough to overcome his Hesitation of 6. The veteran will Hesitate for 3 actions. The samurai rolls, 2, 2, 4, 4, 5, 5, for a total of 4 successes, enough to reduce his Hesitation of 5 down to 1 action.

Now the players decide how they will spend their Hesitating actions. The veteran decides to Run and Scream. He doesn’t even have a weapon drawn! (And he doesn’t know the samurai is Hesitating as well). The samurai opts to Stand and Drool for his single action of Hesitation.

So the veteran bolts screaming off into the night—he sprints to safety. The samurai blinks and freezes up for a fraction of a second, the drool barely escaping his lips before he recovers his wits. Too late though. His opponent has let loose a howl and has a few paces head start. He curses to himself and charges after his fleeing quarry.

For more on actions and movement see Action Reaction.

Mortal Wound

Mortal Wound is a combination of the character’s Power and Forte and it is the indicator of what it takes to kill the character outright. It is the right-most tolerance on the Physical Tolerances Grayscale.

Mortal Wound is never tested and is never modified by the effects of wounds. Mortal Wound can be improved as Power and Forte advance or through certain traits.

For more on Physical Tolerances see Anatomy of Injury; for more on improving your character’s Power and Forte see Advancement; for more on traits see Using Traits in this book or the Trait List in the Character Burner.

Faith

Not every character starts with this special attribute. In fact, only characters who purchase the Faithful trait have access to this Attribute. However, characters who perform pious acts or witness miracles may later develop the Faithful trait and thus the Faith attribute.

Faith is the character’s connection with the divine. It allows characters to work miracles and other acts of god. Faith is not belief. The mechanisms of Faith are detailed in the Faith section.
Tests for Skills and Stats

A hulking black shape lunged from the darkness and shot away down the narrow tree-lined lane. A wolf and rider! Kirin reined his horse about and spurred after the fleeing goblin. He couldn’t let him escape, there would be dire consequences if the goblin’s masters learned of the swordsman’s activities. The wolf raced out of the town into the tall night grass of the fields beyond. Rising in his stirrups, Kirin leaned forward and urged horse faster, faster!

Kirin must catch that warg-wolf. To do so he will need to make a Perception test to see if he notices the wolf trying to slip away, and a Riding test versus the goblin rider to see if he can overtake him. And once he overtakes him, Kirin will have to find some way to subdue him and interrogate him. A whole series of additional tests.

As you can see, tests are the lifeblood of Burning Wheel. They are the instances when the players roll dice for their characters and move the story along. There are three kinds of tests.

Aptitude

Aptitude determines how quickly the character can learn something new. Characters learn new skills using the Aptitude for the root of that skill.

Aptitude is divided into a number of sub-attributes, one for each stat and combination of stats. Characters have a Perception Aptitude, Will Aptitude, Agility Aptitude, Speed Aptitude, Power Aptitude and Forte Aptitude.

Aptitude is never rolled or modified by the effects of wounds. Conversely, as stats improve so do Aptitudes.

Aptitude is only used when learning new skills. This process is detailed in the Advancement section.
**Gameplay**

*Versus* tests are very common in Burning Wheel. Other examples include: Speed vs Speed, to win a race; Stealthy vs Perception, to hide from detection; Inconspicuous vs Perception, to escape notice in a crowd; Haggling vs Will, to get a better price; Persuasion vs Will, to convince someone; Power vs Power, to grapple with someone; Sword Strike vs Sword Parry, to chop off the ‘ead (or not).

**Open Tests**

Perception tests are the most common example of open tests. The GM has a set range of information or results hidden behind the mysterious screen, the players test their characters’ Perception, and the more successes, the more information they get.

An open test generally has no set obstacle. The GM asks the player to roll dice for a skill or stat—the more successes he gets, the better the result. Typically, open tests are the kind you can’t necessarily fail—you just screw them up.

Craftsman and Academic skills occasionally use open tests as well. Basically, toss those dice, the better the result the better you have achieved your goal—the more info available to you or the better your product.

**Testing Skills**

For most skills (Peasant, Craftsman, Medicinal, Academic, Seafaring, Schools of Thought and Artist types) there are three ways to approach a task. These methods allow a character to improve on his work with more successes, or reduce his obstacle by taking more time. Unless the GM says otherwise, these methods are always available:

**Working Carefully**

*Working carefully* reduces the obstacle for the test. Reduce obstacle by one and increase time for test by +50%. This must be announced before the dice are thrown. Physical skills may “work carefully”; it is possible to climb slowly and carefully.

**Working Diligently**

*Working diligently* allows the character to add a degree of quality to his work. Extra successes can be used to add extra features, perks or durability to the final product. If this sounds vague, that’s because it is. There are countless instances when a character needs to make something beautiful, nice or different. This catch-all category allows for those needs. These successes do not allow characters to craft “superior quality” items. That is a whole different story, to be detailed in the forthcoming Craftsman Appendix.

**What if I Don’t Have the Skills? aka Beginner’s Luck**

If a character attempts something that requires a specific skill that she does not have, she rolls dice for the *root stat* of the missing skill (the whole stat, not just half). Root stats are listed with each skill in the list in the Character Burner. There is a penalty for not having the proper skill for the test: *All unskilled obstacles are doubled*. We call this the (drum roll please): *Double obstacle penalty*.

Rahtgash the Orc wants to put a bolt into Von Goten. Though he has a crossbow, Rahtgash doesn’t have the crossbow skill. So he suffers a double obstacle penalty when trying use the crossbow to hit a target.

Or: A peasant with no sword skill and a B4 Agility trying to wield a sword would have a base Ob of 2 to hit his opponent, as opposed to the Ob 1 he would have if he had a Sword skill.

**Double Obstacle Penalty for Versus Tests**

If a character without a skill is competing against a skilled opponent, then the unskilled character must get twice as many successes as the skilled character.

While on sentry duty the bandit rolls his Perception to keep a sharp eye out. A sneak-thief gets 2 successes on her Stealthy test, thus the bandit needs 4 successes to see her—he does not have the skill necessary for detecting stealthy opponents, Observation Training. Stealthy vs Perception is a *versus test* at a *Double Obstacle Penalty*.

*Double obstacle penalty only applies to stats being tested as skills*. It doesn’t apply to stats being tested as stats. Only to stats being tested as skills. For example, if a character is trying to lift a piano she tests her Power, but she doesn’t get a double obstacle penalty because there isn’t a piano lifting skill.

**Working Quickly**

For each success over the base obstacle of the test, the character reduces the overall time for the task by -10%.

**Combining Methods**

Characters may work Diligently and Carefully, or Quickly and Diligently. They may never work Carefully and Quickly. Extra successes (successes over the obstacle) may be divided between working Diligently and working Quickly after the test is made.
Time and Tests

“How much time do I have?” asks the player. “How much time do you take?” asks the GM. Players always want to spend exactly the right amount of time doing something. Unfortunately, life and adventure aren’t always so accommodating.

GM should ask the player how much time she is willing to spend on the task at hand; and then should inform her of how much time the task should take. If she succeeds, it is no big deal, right? The character gets what she is after in the time she allotted.

But when a test is failed, players like to end the task at hand as soon as the dice stop bouncing. In actuality it takes time to fail a test as well. It takes time before the character realizes that she is doing something wrong and should start over. This is why the GM should ask how much time players are willing to spend.

A player is researching a quote from an obscure manuscript. The GM knows what she is looking for is in the manuscript, but he also knows that it could take up to three years to decipher the manuscript. He asks the player: “How long do you want to spend reading through it?” The player answers: “A couple of weeks, I guess.” The player then rolls the dice and happens to fail the test. The GM tells her: “You’ve spent 15 days reading through the text. It is incredibly dense and obscure—you don’t find what you are looking for just yet.” The player asks: “Have I read through the whole thing?” GM: “No, you have skimmed most of it, but read only very little.”

Failing Tests

Failure is not the end of the world. Usually, what it means is that a character has wasted his time and must start again. For example, if a character is sprinting up a staircase and fails his Speed test he doesn’t “not move.” Rather, he slips and stumbles as he runs, it takes him longer to get to the top.

A character leaping a gap who fails his Speed test is at a greater risk. The test is to get over the gap—if he fails that test he doesn’t get over the gap, he falls in.
Half the successes needed– You slide, you slip, you stumble, you spin, you bounce, you tumble. Aside from a few scrapes and bruises, you are unhurt, but time is ticking. The test took 150% of the time required for the task.

One less than what you needed– You almost make it, but at the last minute get a very bad feeling about it. You retreat and decide to try again somewhere else. Test requires the full time allotted to the task.

Martial

Generally, martial skill tests are rather instantaneous things in Burning Wheel. Failure can indicate a number of things, a missed shot, a weak shot, or a glancing blow. Please do not penalize your players with “fumbles” and critical misses.

Sorcerous

Sorcerous skills have their own special failure rules. See Failed Casting in Incantations and Inscriptions for more on that.

Social

Social skills tend to be roleplayed in real time, so the time factor of failure isn’t a very big issue. However, below are listed some possible reaction results for the character’s bumbling:

No successes– A hostile reaction.

Less than half the successes needed– A humorous reaction.

Half the successes needed– An incredulous reaction.

One less than what you needed– An indifferent reaction.

Failure Notes

Obviously, these are general guidelines that do not override other more pressing effects of failure, such as: you get caught lying, you fall off the cliff, you get spotted sneaking around.

However, if the character is not killed or run off by failure he may try again. There is no rule in Burning Wheel that says you can’t try again—just remember that failure takes time.
In Burning Wheel, one test is made. One test counts for the whole situation, like so:

Player: I want to sneak into the bandit’s camp.
GM: Ok, you head off through the woods. Make a Stealthy test.

The player tosses the dice and passes the test beautifully—all successes!

GM: Ok, you come to a stream and start moving along it. Make a Stealthy test.

The player frowns a bit (what about all those successes she just rolled?) and tosses the dice, getting just a few successes.

GM: Turning away from the stream you head along a path. Make a Stealthy test.

The player starts to sweat as the dice come up narrowly successful—I success.

GM: You “creep” up the path. Snickering at the character’s “lack of stealth.” And you see a campfire ahead of you. Make a Stealthy test.

Chewing her lip, the player tosses the dice and comes up…with plenty of successes!

GM: You crawl to the edge of the campfire and look in. You see a few bandits awake and playing cards around the fire, the rest are asleep.

Player: I want to quietly grab one of satchels of a sleeping bandit and make off with it.
GM: Ok, make a Stealthy test.

The player blinks in disbelief, nonetheless she tosses the dice—and gets no successes. (Of course.)

GM: (Sighing). Well, you stumble into the camp and ham-handedly grab one of the bags hanging on a nearby tree. The three men sitting around the fire look up and, not recognizing you, grab their swords and charge you.

Player: I quit.
GM: What? Why? What the hell is your problem?
Player rolls her eyes and her shoves dice down the GM’s throat.

This is not an extreme example. It happens all the time. (Except for the last bit, I imagine.)

How Long Do Tests Count for?
aka, Lettin’ em Ride

Frequency of Tests in Gameplay

A common problem with GMs is that they are constantly asking players to test and retest their character’s abilities for the same thing. Essentially, they are just begging the players to mess up, fail a roll, and let disaster run roughshod over the adventure. I can’t tell you how many times I have heard this scenario:

Player: I want to sneak into the bandit’s camp.
GM: Ok, you head off through the woods. Make a Stealthy test.

The player tosses the dice and passes the test beautifully—all successes!

GM: Ok, you come to a stream and start moving along it. Make a Stealthy test.

The player frowns a bit (what about all those successes she just rolled?) and tosses the dice, getting just a few successes.

GM: Turning away from the stream you head along a path. Make a Stealthy test.

The player starts to sweat as the dice come up narrowly successful—I success.

GM: You “creep” up the path. Snickering at the character’s “lack of stealth.” And you see a campfire ahead of you. Make a Stealthy test.

Chewing her lip, the player tosses the dice and comes up…with plenty of successes!

GM: You crawl to the edge of the campfire and look in. You see a few bandits awake and playing cards around the fire, the rest are asleep.

Player: Alright, I want to know who’s employing them. I’ll quietly grab one of satchels of a sleeping bandit and make off with it.
GM: Ok, how many successes did you get on your Stealthy test?
Player: All successes: (For the sake of example:) 4 successes.
GM: Wow. No problem, you grab the bag and slip off.

Do you see the difference here? The second scenario takes a lot less game time than the first. In the first example the player is bound to fail—roll enough dice, one of the rolls is going to come up bad. Failed test brings on bad juju. GMs love to nail players with failed tests, but what is really at stake here? The player stated her intentions at the outset: “I want to sneak into the bandit camp.” Let the character’s skill and the dice decide how. If she fails that initial test, she goes crashing off into the forest and gets caught. If she passes that initial test, she succeeds. Don’t roll dice for the sake of rolling dice. It only ruins games.

Let it Ride

Let one test stand for the scenario/situation. Perception tests, Stealthy tests, Command tests—any skill or stat that is repeated being tested during a scenario—should be tested once at the beginning. The successes from that test count for the rest of the scenario. But, when conditions change, or players change their course of action, let/make them test anew.

If a player gets three successes on her Perception test, then those successes count toward all instances where dice would be tossed for Perception for the duration of the scenario. Sometimes that means you will always notice things, whereas other times you will be a dunce.
Fun Skill Stuff

Skills are the second most important aspect of this game. They make the story go, they show what a character knows and can do. Listed below are various ways to use your skills in a more integrated manner during the story. This is much more than just “roll the dice, beat the obstacles and go.”

By the way, the most important aspect of the game is, of course, roleplaying. Otherwise it would be called a Skills Playing Game.

Helping Out

Characters with similar or related Skills may assist each other in certain tasks. Academic, Craftsman, Medicinal, Peasant, Seafaring, Schools of Thought and Sorcerous skills may all use the Helping Out rules.

In order to help and be helped one character must be designated as the “primary”—the primary character tests his skill and rolls the dice for the test. Before any dice are rolled the primary must accept the help being offered—this can be conscious or unconscious for the character, but the player must accept: “Ok, help me out.” If this is not the case, those trying to help just get in the way and foul up what the character is trying to accomplish.

There can only be so many helpers. The size of the task and thus how many helpers are allowed should be determined by the GM at the outset.

Thinking, Discussing and Arguing

School of Thought, Academic and Sorcerous skills have special collaboration rules. When people come together to forge an idea, be it a design for a bridge or a formula for a golem, there is no limit to the number of helpers or secondaries. But if one player disagrees with the desired product of the project, then the time of the collaborative test is doubled. Each subsequent disagreement also doubles time. This disagreement is only manifest through roleplay and must be carefully watched for by the GM. Once the players have decided on their desired outcome, they cast the dice and the GM informs them how long they have been at it.

Helping Dice

Each helper with a related or similar skill adds one die, regardless of rank, to the primary’s skill. If the related skill is B4 or higher, add another die to the primary’s test. Each helper may only call upon one skill to help the primary.

A soldier with Field Dressing is helping a midwife with Herbalism treat his wounded friend. They are trying to treat a Severe wound to the leg, (Ob 5 for Herbalism). The two players decide that the midwife is the primary for this test, the soldier will help. The soldier has a Field Dressing skill of B4 and thus adds two dice (1 for having a related skill, and another for having a related skill of exponent 4 or higher). The helping dice are handed over to the midwife and added to her Herbalism skill of B5 for the purposes of the test.

Fields of Related Knowledge: FoRK aka, Helping Yourself

The interrelated nature skills is called “Fields of Related Knowledge” (FoRK).

A character may use his own related skills to help himself. For example, if a character has a Field Dressing and an Anatomy skill he can use the Anatomy skill to FoRK when dealing with wounds.

The die mechanics are similar to the Helping mechanics. The FoRK skill must be a “related” skill. When For RKing, the character rolls an extra die for having the related skill. Only add a second die if the FoRK exponent is 7 or higher.

If our educated soldier from the example above was on his own and needed to treat his wounded friend, he could test his B4 Field Dressing skill +1D ForRKed from his B2 Anatomy skill.

Characters can never “help themselves” with a stat (a stat could be used as a “related skill” to help another character though).

Exactly which skills are related to which is really up to the GM and common sense. Largely it is a situational process. Skills that would help in some situations would not necessarily help in others—if the character was preparing bandages for future need, Anatomy skill wouldn’t help the Field Dressing skill. Skills are listed with suggested FoRKs in the Character Burner General Skill List, but these are by no means the final word on the matter. GMs should allow players to FoRK whenever and wherever they deem it appropriate.
Notes on Instructions

The above process assumes the characters are following instructions for tasks they wouldn’t normally be able to perform. If, perchance, they have the skills to complete the task but choose to Follow Instructions, whether written or spoken, use the rules for Helping Out. Spoken Instructions are only effective if the instructor has a higher skill exponent than the instructee. Add +1D to the test plus an additional die if the instructor’s exponent is 4 or higher. Following Written Instructions for a skill the character already possesses grants +1D.

Training Skills

Some skills are listed as “Trainings.” Trainings are a kind of sub-skill which do not have their own rating shade or exponent rating. Rather, they are dependent on another stat or skill for their dice; they add a little something extra to a skill or stat—a little slice of knowledge that gives an edge.

Observation cancels the Double Obstacle Penalty to spot characters using Stealthy, Inconspicuous or Sleight of Hand. Characters roll Perception vs Stealthy, etc. as usual, but the test is a straight Versus test.

Armour Training mitigates the obstacle penalty for wearing heavy armor.

Shield Training allows characters to use the rules described under Shields for Blocking. Characters using shields without Shield Training must use an action to Block with their shields.

Mounted Combat gives a whole range of abilities detailed in the Riding Section.

Many Trainings just indicate that a character “knows how to do it,” and no roll is necessary. Take Rowing Training for an example. Unless the characters are in some dire boat race of cosmic proportions, the skill should be enough indicate that the character knows what he is doing when rowing a boat or ship.

Following Directions

It is possible for a character with no experience in a skill to follow a set of instructions to complete a task. There are two ways to follow instructions: from a written set and from a person. Following instructions requires that the character be in contact with the set of instructions for the duration of the test, whether it be an instructor or a book.

Written Instructions

Each set of written/illustrated instructions has an obstacle. This obstacle is based on the complexity of the task at hand plus the clarity of the instructions describing that task. The written/illustrated instructions usually increase the test obstacle. Obscure or bad instructions are +5 Ob; poorly written instructions are +4 Ob; instructions with bizarre or unclear illustrations are +3 Ob; adequately written and illustrated instructions are +2 Ob; clearly written and illustrated instructions are +1 Ob. Obviously, if you cannot read you cannot follow written instructions. (Yes, certain instructions may be illustrated and allow illiterate characters to follow along.)

A peasant boy wants forge a sword. He has no skill, but he does have an instruction manual. The obstacle for forging a sword is 3 and the manual is a bit roughly written, for a +3 Ob. The total obstacle for the test is 6. Since the character doesn’t have the Blacksmith skill the test is made against the root, which in this case is the average of Power and Agility.

Written instructions negate the double obstacle penalty for unskilled characters. The time for the test is four times that of a normal skill test. Successes can be used to work carefully, diligently and quickly as with normal skill tests.

Spoken Instructions

One character may tell another how to perform a task. This is not the same as helping. The “instructing” character does not participate in the test at all; rather, he tries to give verbal illustrations of what needs to be done. Most of the time this comes into play when characters are physically separated but able to communicate.

Before giving instructions, the instructor must first pass a skill test as if he was going to perform the test himself—the instructor visualizes the task at hand.

The obstacle for performing an action while being told what to do is the base obstacle for the task plus the difference between the teacher’s and student’s Will exponents. Test skill (or root stat) vs obstacle. Tests using spoken instructions take twice as long as normal tests. Characters may work carefully, quickly and diligently.
Advancement

A character's starting stat, skill and attribute exponents are not set in stone. Each is a separate entity which grows with experience and advances according to its frequency of use. There are no points awarded for advancement and there is no overarching hierarchical achievement system.

When a situation finds a character lacking, new skills can be learned. It's a simple and organic process, a player need only have the desire to learn something new and the character need only have the time and the willingness to learn it.

Lastly, in order to stay “on top of the game,” skills must be maintained. Practice keeps skills from getting rusty and will help the character master his abilities.

Routine, Difficult and Challenging Tests

Characters improve by testing their abilities in game. To advance, players must push their characters’ limits using three levels of skill tests: Routine, Difficult, and Challenging.

Tests do not have to be successful. Pass or fail, tests count toward advancement. Even so, they must be game/story relevant.

Was that a Routine or a Difficult Test?

The level of a test depends on the obstacle of the test vs the exponent being tested. Difficult tests are not the same for B2 skills and B5 skills. A Difficult test for advancement of a B2 skill is Ob 2, while a Difficult test for advancement of a B5 skill is Ob 4 or 5. It is all relative: The better you are at something the harder it is to improve yourself. See the following chart to compare obstacle of the test vs the ability’s exponent to determine the level of the test.

Generally, the GM will inform the players of the obstacle of a task before the dice are thrown. Using the chart, players should be able to easily determine the level of a test for advancement. Compare the obstacle of the test vs the exponent of the ability tested to determine the “level” of the test.

If you don’t know the level of the test make a note and be sure to ask the GM about it after the session. Don’t be afraid to ask, but don’t interrupt the flow of the game!

Skill Exponent vs Actual Number of Dice Rolled for the Test

When consulting the chart above, remember to always use the actual number of dice rolled. This number is not necessarily the same as the exponent of the stat, skill or attribute.

A character with B4 Boxing is at a -1D penalty, while she is wounded she only rolls 3 dice for tests rather than her normal 4. Easy things seem harder, so the obstacles for difficulty drop accordingly. Difficult tests are Ob 2-3, rather than Ob 3-4, and Challenging Tests are Ob 4 rather than Ob 5. (See Anatomy of Injury for wound penalties.)

The reverse counts as well, if a character is using bonus dice, like traits, stances, FolKed skills or equipment dice then it is harder for him to advance.

A character using a magic spear adds +1D to his B4 Spear skill. While as wielding the spear his skill is considered exponent 5 for determining what...
obstacles of what tests count for advancement. Thus Routines wouldn’t count and Difficult tests would be Ob 4-5 rather than 3-4.

FoRK Dice and Advancement

Cross-pollination of knowledge can aid characters in passing tests. However, for the purposes of advancement, the actual number of dice rolled counts as the current skill exponent.

If a character has an Herbalism of B4 and FoRKs in an additional die from Anatomy to pass a test, he would count this test as if he had a B5 skill; Routines wouldn’t count and the Obstacle for a Difficult test would be 4-5 and a Challenging test Ob 6+. The normal requirements for advancement for a B4 ability are: Routines count (Ob 1-2), Difficults are Ob 3-4 and Challenging tests are Ob 5+. So if he was trying to pass an Obstacle 5 test, he would earn a Difficult test for advancement. Whereas if he rolled 4 dice against Ob 5, he would earn a Challenging test.

Number of Tests Required for Advancement

Number of Tests Needed to Advance

Characters need a certain number of tests to advance stats, skills and attributes. The exact number of tests required depends on the ability’s current exponent. See the chart below for the actual requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Exponent</th>
<th>Routine</th>
<th>Difficult</th>
<th>Challenging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Number and Type of Tests Required to Advance

Skill Experience Log

Each time your character uses a skill, you must check it off on the skill log on the character sheet. Mark the level of the test and any notes. If you don’t do this, your character’s skills will never improve and you will be sad.

Pumping Up the Numbers: Raising Stats, Skills and Attributes

If a character has a B3 skill, she must get 3 Routine tests. The Difficult and Challenging test requirements are interchangeable—after she has acquired her Routine tests she needs either 2 Difficults or 1 Challenging test. So she could advance with 2 Routines and 2 Difficults or she could advance with 2 Routines and 1 Challenging test.

Once a skill is at B5 or higher, Routine tests no longer count towards advancement. Only Difficult and Challenging tests count. For a B5 skill, tests with an Obstacle 3 or lower are too easy and the character doesn’t really learn anything from them.

A B6 skill requires 3 Difficult and 2 Challenging tests in order to advance to the next exponent. Routine tests don’t count toward the advancement of this skill exponent.

I Just Learned Something!

Advancement happens immediately. As soon as the character has filled his requirements, his exponent jumps up to the next level. So yes, that means a character could conceivably raise his skill in the middle of an adventure, in the middle of a fight, or in the middle of a debate.

When a character fills a requirement for a skill, the player informs the GM and then advances the exponent for that skill by one. All of the attempts she has listed so far, even extra ones, are erased and the character begins anew her quest for betterment.

Learning is a wonderful thing.

Skill Experience Log

I Just Learned Something!
Advancement and Roleplaying

Not all tests come with the throw of the dice. Many skills will be tested in the course of roleplaying. This is especially true of social skills. The GM should make a note of a player’s attempts to bluff her way through situations or otherwise play out her skills and should reward her with skill tests (and the difficulty level of said tests) for the purposes of advancement.

In Burning Wheel roleplaying should always come before the dice. Dice just get in the way.

Advancement Bits

Multiple or Series Tests

Multiple tests to accomplish one goal only earn one test, whether that be surviving a fight or picking a lock.

When testing skills repetitively do not write down each test. Only the hardest test counts for any given encounter. If a character is in a whirling fistfight atop a building, many tests will be made against his Boxing skill. Do not log each blow, note only the test with the highest difficulty level.

Exemplary Tests

Dice are our worst enemies and our best friends. All too often dice fail us at the worst possible moments, creating definite lows in gameplay. However, those pesky little cubes can turn right around and succeed in such a way that we didn’t think statistically possible.

In this system it doesn’t matter if you roll one billion 6s or just a bunch of 4s and 5s, the test is passed so long as the obstacle is met. But sometimes a player is just darn lucky with the dice and affects his idiom with verve and panache supported by lots of sets of six dimples. When a player rolls really, really well for a test, note it as an “exemplary test.” In the scheme of the rules, these tests are counted the same as all others. But when it comes time to tally up skill tests to advance, and the character is one Routine short to advance his Oratory skill, but he has an exemplary test noted, give him the Routine and let the skill advance.

This “gift” should be used infrequently and cautiously. Don’t let the dice rule the game, but sometimes it is fun to imagine that luck can be a great teacher!
Advancing Statistics

Stats never count Routine tests for advancement. Aside from that, stats are advanced the same way as skills. Use the same chart as skills to determine the number of tests needed to advance a stat.

Advancing Perception

Perception advances a little differently than other stats: Only successful Perception tests count toward advancement.

Advancing Attributes

Reflexes are advanced by raising the stats it is dependent on.

Health is governed by the stats it is factored from; if a character raises both Forte and Will then Health follows. However, Health can also be raised like a skill—log tests for advancement when taking Health tests. Finally, Health is affected by outside factors, such as lifestyle and living conditions. These factors can be roleplayed by a player. The outcome of such roleplaying can give the GM cause to raise or lower Health as well.

Aptitude decreases as the governing stats increase. (Lower Aptitude is better in Burning Wheel.) Mortal Wound is raised as Power and Forte are raised. When Mortal Wound is raised, the other tolerances may be moved one step to the right, so long as they are in accordance with the rules as described in the Character Burner. Steel is raised with experience, and acts like a skill for advancement.

Faith is raised like a skill, but it is also like Perception: Only successful Faith tests count toward advancement.

Practice and Training

Practice is absolutely essential for someone striving to be at the top of her game. In Burning Wheel, practice will aid characters: A healthy practice regimen will prevent a character from losing her edge and can improve skills and stats. Also, a master of the arts will one day realize that life doesn’t provide enough Challenging tests, she must practice intensely in order to better herself.

Practice time comes in many forms: exercising, studying, and even trying out your skills on your friends. Listed below are the necessary practice cycles for the different categories of skills. Cycle is the length of time that a character needs to practice in order to earn a test. Hours/day indicates the actual time per day that the character must spend practicing during the cycle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Category</th>
<th>Cycle</th>
<th>Routine</th>
<th>Difficult</th>
<th>Challenging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>6 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craftsman</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forester</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>6 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martial</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicinal</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>4 hours/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peasant</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>1 hour/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School of Thought</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>6 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seafaring</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4 hrs/day</td>
<td>8 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorcerous</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>5 hours/day</td>
<td>10 hrs/day</td>
<td>15 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special/Misc</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>6 hrs/day</td>
<td>12 hrs/day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a character maintains the daily hours time requirement for one practice cycle, he earns the appropriate test for that skill for the purpose of advancement.

Yes, eventually practice makes perfect.

A recluse sorcerer sits in his tower all day and studies Sorcery. If he studies for 5 hours a day for one year he will earn one Routine test for his trouble. This counts toward skill advancement like any other skill test.

If he reads for 10 hours a day for a year, then he gets a Difficult test for his trouble.

If he reads for 15 hours a day for a year, then he gets a Challenging test for his trouble. And Challenging tests are very hard to come by.

So let’s say our recluse sorcerer has a Sorcery skill of B5. He sits in his tower for four years. The first three years he reads for 10 hours a day. He gets three Difficult tests for practice. On the dawn of the fourth year he realizes he is on to something so he spends the next 365 days studying 15 hours a day. At the end of the fourth year he earns a Challenging test and his B5 Sorcery skill is raised to B6. Of course he has no friends now, and his cats have long since abandoned him.
Beginner’s Luck: Learning New Skills

To start the process of learning a new skill a character only has to try it once in game in an applicable situation, either a moment where the character is called upon to use the ability/skill they don’t have (and thus start learning), or a situation where one character instructs another.

Let me stress applicable situation again. The character attempting to learn the skill must have some kind of model to go by. The model can be as straightforward as a book or an instructor. Or it can be something a bit more complex, like actually trying to sneak up on a bandit camp. (“If I am quiet, I stay alive; If I am a noisy rhinoceros the bandits are going to wake up and kill me.”)

A character can not walk around an empty room on his tiptoes saying, “I will learn Stealthy and then practice until I have a B10.”

Beginner’s Luck

When players need to use skills that their characters don’t have they rely on a phenomenon known as Beginner’s Luck. The player tests with the full dice from the root stat (or average of stats rounded down). Root stats are listed with their respective skills in the Character Burner. Don’t forget: There is a double obstacle penalty for using Beginner’s Luck.

At the bottom of the fourth page of the character sheet there is a section called “Skills Being Learned.” This is where players should note down Beginner’s Luck tests.

Stat Practice Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Cycle</th>
<th>Routine</th>
<th>Difficult</th>
<th>Challenging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>3 hours/day</td>
<td>6hrs/day</td>
<td>12hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>4 hours/day</td>
<td>8hrs/day</td>
<td>16hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agility</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4hrs/day</td>
<td>8hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4hrs/day</td>
<td>8hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>2 hours/day</td>
<td>4hrs/day</td>
<td>8hrs/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forte</td>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>4 hours/day</td>
<td>8hrs/day</td>
<td>16hrs/day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is very hard and time consuming to practice some stats. In order to gain the full benefit of practice, the player must describe exactly what his character is doing to hone his abilities. The GM has the final say whether or not it counts as viable practice. More often than not, experience is the best teacher.

Maximum Practice

Time limits practice. A character may only practice as much as he has time for, outside of sleeping, eating and adventuring. Don’t you have anything better to do?

Unpractice

It is possible for skills to drop due to lack of use. If a character goes through one whole practice cycle without testing or practicing a skill, then that skill drops by one exponent point. Lost points can be regained through experience.

* A skill will never fall below half its “highest” rating or its root, which ever is higher.

These are guidelines. Use them to your best judgment. But remember an old marksman who has gotten rusty from leading a farmer’s life is a roleplaying bonanza. And think about the possibility of a doctor who became a diplomat five years ago, suddenly captured as prisoner of war and thrown in with the sick and dying. Imagine his joy as he starts to recall his forgotten skills….

Notes on Practice and Maintenance

These rules are definitely not for one-off adventures. Practice rules are really meant for campaign-length games.

The practice rules are presented here to allow characters to come home after a long adventure and fill in the gaps in their knowledge. Let’s say a swordsman comes back from a long adventure one Difficult test short of a B6 skill. The player tells the GM that he spends a month training all day, every day, and voila, he earns his B6 skill. Of course, that means he has given his enemies a whole month to track him down and learn of his activities, but that’s another matter entirely.

Root Stats

Root stats are detailed in the Character Burner. But to refresh your memory:

A root stat is the source of a skill. When asked to test a root, players roll the dice for the appropriate stat at a double obstacle penalty.
Learning From Another, aka Instruction.

A teacher can create “applicable situations” for his students and thereby teach them a new skill, or hone skills they may already have. Essentially, an instructor tests students.

An instructor can only offer tests with obstacles equal to or less than his skill level.

It takes time to teach. Some students require longer to grasp a concept than others and, conversely, some teachers are better than others. To determine time of the instruction, subtract the instructor’s Will from 10, then subtract the student’s Will from 10. Add the results to get the number of days required for each test.

Tests from an instructor can count as tests against Aptitude for starting a new skill.

Teaching is Learning

An instructor can learn about his strengths and weaknesses from teaching his students. Teaching another earns tests for advancement: If the student has no skill or the skill exponent is two less than the instructor’s, then the test is Routine. If the student’s skill is one less, then the test is Difficult. It is not possible to get Challenging tests from Instruction.

What is the root? All skills are listed with their roots in the Character Burner. For example, Sword’s root is Agility; Carpentry’s root is Agility/Perception (the average of those two stats rounded down).

Advancing Beginner’s Luck Level Skills

A character must test his Beginner’s Luck a number of times equal to his appropriate Aptitude. Once a character has done this, the skill has been “learned” and the character no longer has access to Beginner’s Luck—he now has a root level skill.

When advancing a skill via the character’s Aptitude, Difficult and Challenging tests count for more than Routine tests. A Difficult test counts as two tests toward the Aptitude requirement, and Challenging counts as three. Judge the obstacle of the test against the root stat.

A peasant picks up a sword and sets off to war with the king’s army. The Peasant has an Agility of B4, so his Aptitude for the sword is 6 (10 minus B4 Agility). For the first six skirmishes our boy manages to get in a swing or two with his Beginner’s Luck and earns tests for advancement. After the sixth battle his Beginner’s Luck runs out and the peasant will earn a root level Sword skill.

After Beginner’s Luck Runs Out: Root Level Skills

Once a character has worked through his Beginner’s Luck, he acquires his new skill at its root level—half of the root stat or average of root stats.

The shade of a root skill is that of its source. If the root is made of two stats, then the root skill is the shade of the darker one.

The governing stat for Sword is Agility. The conscripted peasant’s is B4, thus his Root for Sword is B2 (1/2 his root stat. The shade is the same as the root stat, Black). This is his starting Sword skill. As he progresses his skill will advance from his root skill of B2 and he will join the ranks of professional soldiery.

Learning Training Skills

A character may learn Training skills, such as Armor Training, Observation Training and Formation Fighting, in the course of his life. Aptitude requirements are the same as for normal skills, but tests can only be earned via practice or instruction. In-game tests against a Training do not count.
Using Traits

Roleplaying Traits

Traits must be personified. Sure it’s nifty to have all these odds and ends that you can pull out of nowhere to save your arse, but they are more than just notes on the page. Players must weave them into the fabric of their characters or risk losing them. My favorite example of this is characters with Affinity for Bows. Players love to take this trait because it makes them a bad-ass with a bow. But they never play it. They just whip out the bow when it’s convenient and shoot down the baddies. Their characters never talk about their bows, never cleans the bows, never even thinks about the bows until it’s time to pop it out and whoop-ass. Players tend to forget what the nature of “Affinity” is, an overriding fondness or love for something. Characters with affinities should live, eat and sleep their affinity. It doesn’t have to be ridiculous or stereotypical, but it should be roleplayed. And if it’s not, the GM has full rights to strip the character of his trait. In fact, this stands for all traits, all the time.

For more on gaining and losing traits see the Campaigning section of this book.

Character Traits

Booming Voice, Stinky, Bottomless Stomach, Comely, Ornery, Paranoid, etc. are all character traits. They don’t modify the character per se, but they modify the way the character is played in the game and, more often than not, the way the character is perceived.

Even though character traits do not modify die rolls, they are still the most important traits in the game. They are the flesh over the bones of the numbers. Playing character traits helps other players (not to mention yourself) get an understanding of what that character is all about. Playing in a consistent and believable manner will earn players no end of Artha from the GM. (See Campaigning for more on Artha.)

Die Traits

Die traits modify die rolls. Usually this means adding or subtracting dice, but some die traits can also lower obstacles for certain tests and, rarer still, some die traits permanently modify a stat or skill.

Characters use die traits whenever the stat, skill, attribute or specific die roll comes up, they are “always on.” The die roll is modified by the trait as indicated in the specific description.

Affinity for Bows is a good example of a die trait. Whenever the character uses a bow he gets a bonus die to his skill test.

Special Die Traits

Gifted and Faithful are two special die traits that don’t modify existing dice per se. Rather they give characters access to skills and abilities that they would not otherwise be able to use without these traits.

Call-On Traits

Call-on traits are by far the most fun—weird little abilities or kernels of knowledge that are only any good in bizarre circumstances. Of course bizarre circumstances tend to be pretty common in roleplaying games, so call-on traits get a fair bit of use.

As the name suggests, these traits must be “called on” during the game to have any effect or use. Generally, it is the player who must call on his or her appropriate traits. It is not up to the GM to remember what a freak you are, but occasionally a GM will be nice and remind you, “Don’t you have the Fleet of Foot trait?”

Call-on traits allow the player to make a test where none would have been allowed before, or to be able to break a tie between two numbers, or be able to gain special consideration for a situation.

Two characters are racing and they both have BS Speed, but one has the Fleet of Foot Trait. It is that character who wins the race by a hair. (Unless of course the other racer has a trait to counter Fleet of Foot!) If two characters are in an arm wrestling match and the dice come up a tie—same successes—but one of the characters has the Fortitude Trait, then that character wins the match. She holds her opponent at the top and slowly wears him down with her superior endurance. Or two characters in a contest of wills to see who will flinch first: One character comes up 1 success short, normally he would be the loser. However, he calls on his Iron Will trait, saying, “I have an Iron Will, I will not flinch!” The GM smiles and says, “Ok, let’s test Will vs Will again and see if you really mean it.”

Call-on traits go beyond dice. They should, whenever possible, completely supersede dice, but they are not ultrapowerful. From the arm wrestling example...
above, if one character has a Pow B6 and the other a Pow B5 plus the Fortitude trait, the trait does not automatically beat the stat. Dice are rolled, a versus test, and if the Fortitude-y character can tie her opponent then she can “call on” her trait to push her over the edge and win a seemingly impossible match up!

The racing example from above was decided by the trait before the throw of the dice because both characters had the same dice to throw, the trait being the only difference between them.

Rarely, very rarely, a player may find himself in a situation where one of his character’s character traits can be used as a call-on trait. For example, if the character has the Secretive trait he is more likely to hide his valuables, or perhaps even to know where another Secretive person would hide hers....

**Using Instincts**

Instincts are very similar to call-on traits. They are little bits and pieces of character that the player can summon to save his butt at odd times during the course of the game.

Usually these are gut reactions that have been drilled into the character. Instincts, like call-on traits, should supersede game mechanics whenever possible.

Instincts also allow the players to sketch out some basic (and reliable) behavior for his characters, something that his character always does, so that he doesn’t have to repeat himself or get into arguments with the GM: “You didn’t say you drew your sword!” “But my top Instinct is to ‘Draw my sword at the first sign of trouble.’”

By and large, if the character has the instinct written down there should not be a test involved, the act should just be considered done. For example: Always start a fight in aggressive stance; Draw sword at first sign of trouble; Dive for cover at first sign of bow fire. Or (my favorite), scream for help if surprised/hesitating/stunned.

No tests are required to activate these instincts, they are pre-programmed gut-reactions. However, if a player decides to get a complicated, like, “If something is thrown at me I try to catch it and throw it back,” then a test is in order. However, the character should be able to act out his instinct even if it comes up out of the normal sequence of play (especially in the action script). The instinct lets the character give it a shot, but he still must make the test to see if he pulls it off.

In general, instincts are so niche-y that they rarely come up and when they do it is fairly significant and fun. If a character has an applicable instinct written down, then give him the benefit of the doubt and let him at least try.

**Using Beliefs**

Beliefs are never rolled and always tested. They don’t provide extra dice, bonuses or penalties. Rather, they provide a guide for how the character might react to certain situations. If a character’s one Belief is: “My dog, Angus, loves me. He is my best friend,” and, during the course of the adventure, the character and the dog become separated, when the chaos has momentarily subsided, the first thing out of that character’s mouth should be, “I’ve got to go back for Angus!” The adventure takes another turn as the party agrees that Angus is worth saving, and they rush back into the fire to help.

These are guidelines. They do not have to be fanatical tenets in your own personal religion. Playing up your characters’ Beliefs, no matter how subtle or overt, will help you better understand your character, because once played, Beliefs then can be questioned and challenged. Those challenges are what truly drive character growth.

On the more pragmatic side of gaming, the GM will award more Artha to players who best embody their Beliefs. See Campaigning for Artha and Changing Beliefs.
Action Reaction

Time is broken down in a very specific way when the action starts rolling in Burning Wheel—everything a character does is planned out in metered segments, then resolved in turns.

Even though it is a very structured process, action tends to be very wild in this game. Characters are all acting at once, trying to survive the mayhem. Players are forced to think ahead in order to outwit their opponents and gain the upper hand in the melee; because when it comes time roll the dice if your character is reacting to what is going on, then he is a step behind (and most likely in trouble).

Reflexes determine how many actions a character has, or how many times a character may act in the “turn.” The game turn is called the exchange. In order to keep things simple in gameplay, the exchange is broken down into three segments, called volleys. Lastly, players must plan ahead, moment to moment, what their characters will do in the exchange. This is done by writing a script of the characters’ actions.

I am now going to walk you through the basics of the Action Reaction terms, if you see something you don’t understand, be patient it will be explained as we go.

The Exchange

An exchange is a small chunk of time where everyone—characters and their opponents—may act, move and speak.

Reflexes in the Exchange

Characters can act in the exchange a number of times equal to their Reflexes.

Writing Out the Exchange

When it is time to fight a combat, all players (and the GM) write out their actions for the exchange. This is called writing a script.

Volley

An exchange is broken down into three smaller segments called volleys. When writing a script a character’s Reflexes are divided evenly between the three volleys. The results of the volleys are then resolved in order, 1-2-3.

After the third volley has been resolved, a new exchange begins; the players and the GM write new scripts.

Actions

An action is a brief interval of time wherein a character can perform a simple, physical or mental feat. The benchmark for most actions is the quick swing of a sword.

Of course some acts are more complicated than others—it is more complicated to open a door than it is to close it, for example. Thus, some acts cost more actions in the exchange.

Actions include: Strike, Feint, Block, Counterstrike, Avoid, slamming a door, Glancing into a room, Lobbing a ball, Incanting two syllables of a spell and Acquiring a target.

Regardless of what they are, all actions are considered to absorb the full attention of the character for that moment. Therefore, characters may not do “two things at once.” For example, a character may not Strike and Assess on the same action.

Tandem Actions

Obviously, some things can be done simultaneously, such as moving and speaking. Movement and Speech are tandem actions, they may be performed while the character is undertaking another action, like swinging a sword.

Spell-casting is not considered “speech:” it is an action unto itself and thus obeys the standard rules for actions during the exchange, in addition to its own special strictures. Movement-like actions, such as diving through a window, are not tandem actions and require actions to perform in the volley.
**Reflexes**

Consult the chart below to see how many actions a character gets per exchange and how that divides into the three volleys.

Most Reflexes don’t divide evenly by three, a player has three options for his character’s “extra action(s).” The chart shows how a player may place his character’s odd actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reflexes</th>
<th>Actions Per Exchange</th>
<th>Volleys and Action Combinations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/–/– or –/1/– or –/–/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1/1/– or –/1/1 or 1/–/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1/1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2/1/1 or 1/2/1 or 1/1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2/2/1 or 2/1/2 or 1/2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2/2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3/2/2 or 2/3/2 or 2/2/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3/3/2 or 3/2/3 or 2/3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3/3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V1/V2/V3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a character has B4 Reflexes, she gets one action each volley with one left over. She can put that remainder action in the first, second or third volley. For Reflexes of B5, the character has two actions in two volleys and a single action in the third volley. In each exchange, players are allowed to chose which volleys are loaded with “extra” actions.

**Scripts**

Scripting is designed to simulate the hectic and unpredictable nature of combat. You might be able to guess what your opponent will do next, but you can never be sure.

All players must write out their characters’ actions for the entire exchange. Actions must be written down in the order they are to be performed, and they must be properly divided between the volleys according to the Reflexes: Actions Per Volley Chart above. Scripts must be written in private, without consulting the other players. Of course, the players are allowed to ask the GM reasonable questions and requests.

**What Do I Write?**

Be simple and direct. Remember, each action is a mere moment in time.

Sequences should be broken down into component actions and spanned out across the volleys. Here is an example of a script for a character with B5 Reflexes: *Kick barrel over, Strike barrel (with axe), Block, Shoulder-check Orc, Toss torch into pool of oil.* See the sample script below:

**Targets of Opportunity**

A player doesn’t have to be too specific in his script when it comes to targets and such. If a player scripts a “Strike” action and there is an enemy within reach, then the character may act whether or not the enemy was his intended target.

For example, if a melee involves several Orcs and the player has his character go on a mad hacking spree: “Strike, Strike, Strike, Strike,” he can choose which target he is attacking when he rolls the dice. He doesn’t have to write it into the script unless he is going for a specific effect. (Like the Orc captain’s head).

**Enacting Scripts**

Even though players are required to script all three volleys at once, each volley is announced and resolved one at time. This is to keep combat orderly and relatively manageable. So after everyone is done scripting, each player reads off all of his actions for Volley 1. After all the tests and decisions from Volley 1 are sorted out, then move on to Volley 2. Everyone, including the GM and his NPCs, declares their actions for the volley. After everyone has read their script for the volley, all die rolls are made and tests resolved. Once the current volley has been acted out, then the next volley is announced.

**Sequence of Action in Scripts, or Who Goes First?**

When a player scripts a volley, he writes his character’s actions in a list, top to bottom, first to last. When actions are announced, all players have a first action...
Gameplay

for that volley, some will have a second action and a (very) few will have a third action for the volley. First actions happen at the same time, then second actions, and so on.

No one really “goes first” in the normal sequence of play. All first actions happen at the same time, all second actions happen at the same time, etc. Characters with higher Reflexes have the advantage because they will be able to act when other characters cannot. Thus they may defend themselves from attack and strike after their opponents have spent their impetus.

What If My Character Doesn’t Have an Action (and Somebody Else Does)?

Characters are only considered to be actively defending (or attacking) on the actions they have scripted. The system is very literal. So if your first (and only) action is Block and your opponent has two actions scripted, Strike and Strike, then your character may attempt to defend herself from the first blow, but not the second. See the Melee Mechanics section for more on martial actions.

Movement

The pace is the standard measure of distance in Burning Wheel. A character’s Speed exponent equals the number of paces he can walk in one exchange. Speed x2 is the number of paces a character can jog in one exchange. Speed x3.5 is the number of paces a character can sprint in one exchange.

Movement in Volleys

See the chart below to determine how far a character moves at each of the three rates during a volley.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paces Moved per Volley</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Slowpokes with a B1 Speed only walk-move in one volley out of the exchange (player’s choice) and only jog-move in two volleys out of the exchange. They may sprint in all three volleys. Pokeys with a B2 Speed walk-move 1 pace in two volleys out of the exchange.

The numbers listed in the chart above are the paces moved at that rate in one volley.

Thus if a character with a B3 walks in Volley 1 he moves one pace during that volley; if he jogs in Volley 2 then he moves two paces, if he then sprints in Volley 3 then he moves three paces in that volley.

Movement in Exchanges

If a character moves the same rate for a whole exchange, then he uses the distances listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paces Moved per Exchange</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A character with a B5 Speed walking in all three volleys would move five paces total. Two paces in the first volley, one in the second and two in the third.

Scripting Movement

Most of the time a player will not know exactly how far they want or need to move. The GM should feel free to help the players by telling them how long it will probably take their characters to move from point to point.

For example, “I want to get to the tree quickly.” The GM measures the distance on his map and checks the character’s Speed, “Ok, it will take you two exchanges sprinting.” The player can then plan accordingly.

Or, “I run to the door, stop, and look in.”

“Ok, you will be there in the middle of Volley 2.”

This information should be provided to the players before scripts are written, so that their actions are based on where they will be and how long it will take them to get there.
Aim

A character using a bow, crossbow, gun or thrown weapon may Aim his shots. Aiming is done in intervals of actions. Each action spent Aiming reduces the character’s obstacle to hit. See Combat Obstacle Modifiers for more on this.

Assess

Assess is the term used for when a character wishes to stop and look. There are three degrees of Assess: Glance, Look, and Search. A glance is a quick look in one particular direction: ahead, behind, left or right. If a character wants to glance down a hallway, it takes one action, but if they want a quick glance around a room (left, right and ahead), that takes three actions. Look absorbs two actions of the script. Looking assumes the character is examining something a bit more carefully. The third type of assess is the search action, which requires three actions of the script. The character dedicates a moment to thoroughly examining something before moving on.

Draw Bow

It requires 2 actions to Draw a hunting bow, 4 to Draw a long or greatbow. As he draws the bow the archer gets a “free” Acquire Target—choosing a victim for the shot is just a natural part of using the bow. This action does not include nocking an arrow. A character may hold a bow drawn for actions equal to his Power.

A bowman may reduces his draw time by one action if wishes to fire an unacquired “snapshot.”

Draw Weapon

Two actions are required to unsheathe/unsling a handheld weapon. This includes sheathed swords, throwing knives, slung crossbows, etc. It does not apply to concealed weaponry on the character. Concealing a weapon will usually increase the amount of actions required to draw it.

Get Up

Characters are always getting knocked down. It requires two actions for a character to get back on her feet from being laid flat. The first action is spent entirely on getting one’s feet under oneself. However, characters may begin to move on the second action of Get Up.

Incant Spell

Spells are difficult to cast and require concentration, thus only two syllables per action may be incanted. Spells are not speech, but a full act on their own and abide by all the rules for actions, just like swinging a sword. (All shades of Reflexes cast spells at the same rate.)
The “set of conditions” must be very specific, otherwise the action will either be blundered or set off by unspecific goals. Conditionals may only be maintained for a number of actions equal to the character’s Will. If the conditions are not met after this time, then the character spends his next action hesitating as he blinks, scratches or burps.

Shoot/Release

1 action is required to release, trigger or launch a bow, crossbow or handgun.

Speech

Only two syllables may be spoken per action.

Surprise and the Unexpected

A character caught off her guard tests her Steel to see if she Hesitates from the surprise. It has got to be really unexpected, not just a clever attack. Something like a giant spider dropping on your head while you are standing in a tunnel giving a speech about which direction the party should go in.

Sometimes an exchange will be initiated with a surprise attack. In this case, the victim of the surprise should test her Steel before the scripts are written. The results of the Steel test—how many actions she hesitates, if any—will greatly effect how she scripts his actions for the coming exchange. See Steel in Using Your Abilities for the basic mechanics of Hesitation.

A Witchhunter has retired to her home for the evening. Entering the dim confines of the apartment, she hangs her cloak on a hook. Suddenly, a shadow shifts and breaks away from the others, lunging toward her—a demon-assassin sent by one of her many enemies! The Witchhunter must make a Steel test before the script is written. Her Steel is B6 with a Hesitation of 5 Actions. She rolls 4 successes, thus her first action of the coming exchange is lost to Hesitation as she recovers from surprise. After she has hesitated the applicable actions, the Witchhunter may act out the rest of the exchange with her remaining actions. Her Reflexes are B5, so she scripts her actions like so: V1: Hesitate, Avoid; V2: Avoid; V3: Avoid, Avoid.

Forfeiting Actions

Players may forfeit actions in the middle of an exchange if they deem them unusable or foolish. When forfeiting, the player changes one action and then crosses off a second from his script (which hasn’t been played yet). The action lost is replaced with a Hesitation action. So when forfeiting, a character loses one
action completely and changes another to a new, desired action. A player may forfeit as many times as they see fit, providing they have one action to forfeit—knock off—and one to trade in for the new action.

A player may forfeit at the start of any volley before anything has been declared to the other players or the GM. If actions for the volley have already been declared, then players may not forfeit—the actions must be acted out. If the script for the first volley has already been read and you realize that your second action is a waste, you are stuck with it—it has been announced!

Any action may be forfeited to an Assess without losing a second action.

An intrepid adventurer gets thrown for a loop. On her second volley she goes to Block an anticipated Strike from her Orc foe. But instead of Striking, the Orc uses the Get Inside action (and is successful). Now, before the third volley is announced, the player tells the GM, “I am forfeiting an action,” and quickly scribbles the changes on her script. She forfeits her Lob action and changes her Push action into a Strike. An Orc on the inside is very dangerous, so she wants to jam her torch into the bastard and get him off!

Forfeiting in the Exchange

Volley 1 | Volley 2 | Volley 3
---|---|---
1st—Kick barrel Over | 1st—Block Orc | Get Inside
2nd—Strike barrel with axe | Actions/Speech | New 1st—Strike Orc with touch
Dash (fast) | Actions/Speech | Change this one...to this:
Move (slow) | dash (slow) | New 1st—Strike Orc with touch

Players may not forfeit movement for the volley they are currently acting in. If a character is sprinting through Volley 1, and on her second action she realizes that she wants to stop, she is out of luck. She must complete her sprint for that volley.

Players may forfeit one action from their script to change their movement rate in an upcoming volley.

Think ahead.

Forfeiting Tandem Actions

If a character using the *Chow Yun Fat* trait or another similar trait forfeits the action that he has linked to his tandem Assess/Acquire, he loses the trait bonus for that exchange.

Initiative

As discussed at the beginning of this section, everyone essentially goes at the same time in the exchange. Higher Reflexes give more actions, but don’t instantly put you first. In order to go first, to act before your opponent, players must bid for initiative.

Bidding for Initiative

A player can bid his last action of the yet to be scripted/declared exchange in order to insure that he has the initiative. This bid allows the player to act first in the volley. All bids must be announced by the bidding player to the other players/GM prior to writing the script. Once announced, anyone can enter a bid.

To bid, a player announces, “I bid for initiative.” Each bid costs an action. Other players may raise the bid, highest number of actions bid “wins.”

The winning bid is allowed a single “lightning” or “quick draw” action that is resolved at the very top of the exchange before any of the actions of any other scripts are resolved. After the bid action is resolved, the remainder of the character’s actions are played out in the exchange as normal. Also, all other scripts proceed as normal after the bid has been resolved.

Characters who spent actions bidding divide their remaining actions evenly among the three volleys.

Swordsman with a B5 Reflexes wants to outdraw Witchhunter with Reflexes of B6. Swordsman bids one action to draw first. This action is removed from Swordsman’s script for the exchange, it is used up bidding to be first. (Essentially, Swordsman’s Reflexes drops to B4, but his first action of those four would go before all others.)

Swordsman now has four actions this exchange. His first action, the bid action, coming at the head of the script before anyone else’s. The remaining three actions fall on the intervals V1: Action 1, V2: Action 1, V3: Action 1. Due to the great expenditure of energy and concentration Swordsman exerted to go first, he does not have access to his full Reflexes this exchange.
Gameplay

Counter-Bidding Actions Example
When Swordsman announces his initiative bid, Witchhunter can counter-bid. By doing this, Witchhunter negates Swordsman’s edge and the exchange is acted out in the traditional manner. If Swordsman so desires he can bid another action to take the lead. This does not mean that he gets two quick-draw actions. It means that Swordsman has outbid Witchhunter and now he once again has the initiative. If Witchhunter bid another action she would once again tie up Swordsman’s bid and both characters would act simultaneously in the exchange (but with two less actions).

Slow Bids
Rather than bidding for initiative a player can have his character bid to go last in the exchange. The mechanics are the same as bidding for initiative except that the character’s action would come after all others have finished their actions.

Winning the Bid
Only the winner of the bid is allowed to take the first, or lightning, action. Everyone who bid loses the actions they bid and acts with their Reflexes reduced by that number of actions. Even if it is a tie, the bidding characters lose those actions.

Bidding Artha
Another method of winning initiative is by bidding Artha. Rather than bidding an action, a character may instead pay a point of Artha to go first. Bid Artha trumps bid actions. Of course, the only way to outbid Artha is to bid more Artha. There is no limit to the amount of Artha that can be bid.

See Campaigning for more on Artha.

Upping the Ante
Once Artha is bid all previously bid actions are returned to each player. In order to counter-bid the opposing character must spend a point of Artha. The mechanics are the same as for bidding. If it is an Artha tie, then all points spent are lost, but no one Hesitates actions. If more than two characters are bidding and Artha is bid, the process can start again—actions may be bid under the Artha bid. In that case, the highest bid Artha goes first and then the highest bid number of actions.

Melee Mechanics

The press of hand-to-hand fighting is a wild affair, replete with attack, defense and counterattack. Melee Mechanics details a system of “moves” that are available to characters in the press of combat.

Martial maneuvers are as follows: Avoid, Block, Change Stance, Charge, Counterstrike, Disarming Strike, Feint, Get Inside, Great Strike, Lock, Push, Throw and Strike. The term “martial arts” or “boxing” in the Burning Wheel system describes all forms of trained hand-to-hand combat.

- A character without any martial skill rely on their Agility in a melee and are limited to the Strike, Push and Lock actions.
- Brawling skill uses Strike, Block, Charge, Throw, Push and Lock.
- Martial Arts/Boxing have all the basic actions available unless otherwise restricted by their art.
- Weapons Skills have access to all of the martial actions so long as they possess a weapon related to their skill or an item similar enough to substitute for the weapon.
- All characters may use the Get Inside and Avoid actions. Unless otherwise stated, these maneuvers are always based on the character’s Speed and not a skill.

All martial actions (except Great Strike) cost one action in the script.

Stances

In the Burning Wheel Melee Mechanics any combatant may choose to take a stance. Are you on the attack? Are you keeping your distance? Or are you staying balanced and ready for anything? Each stance has its strengths and weaknesses.

It requires one action to take a stance. (See the Change Stance maneuver.) Like other actions, the character may move and/or speak when they take a stance. Characters cannot sprint in stance.
There are three stances:

**Neutral Stance**
This stance keeps the character balanced and ready for anything. No bonuses or penalties. All characters are considered to be in neutral stance unless they use the Change Stance action, an Instinct or a trait.

**Neutral Moves**
Some martial maneuvers can be done in any stance without penalty. These moves are listed in the Martial Actions section with the **neo** notation. Get Inside, Push, Lock, Throw, Charge are neutral actions. They do not benefit from stance bonuses nor are they penalized by stance restrictions. You can conduct “neutral” maneuvers without modifiers in all Aggressive or Defensive stance.

**Aggressive Stance**
This stance focuses on the attack. All martial maneuvers listed with an **agg** are performed at 1.5 times the character’s martial skill (or root) when in Aggressive stance. (Bonus equals half the character’s skill rounded up; Add these dice to the character’s base skill.)

*If a character with a B4 Sword skill goes into Aggressive Stance and Strikes, the player rolls six dice for the maneuver.*

- Any maneuvers with a **def** listed next to them are performed at half the character’s Martial Arts/Weapon skill exponent rounded down. Thus if a character with a B4 Sword skill is in Aggressive Stance and wants to Block, the player rolls two dice for the maneuver. (Half of B4 is two.)
- No Avoid. Characters in Aggressive Stance may not Avoid at all.
- Neutral maneuvers and Natural Defenses are not affected by Aggressive stance bonuses or penalties.

**Defensive Stance**
Characters can take a defensive posture that focuses on evasion and counterstriking. All martial actions listed with a **def** are performed at 1.5 times the character’s skill when in Defensive stance. Round up.

*Thus if a character with a B5 Spear skill goes into Defensive Stance and Blocks, the player would roll eight dice for the maneuver—Half of five rounded up is three dice, added to the character’s skill of B5.*

- The Defensive Stance bonus applies to a characters’ Speed for Avoid actions. Thus a character with a B4 Speed in Defensive Stance Avoids with six dice.
- Characters count as Blocking during the Change Stance: Defensive stance action. Characters do not get the Defensive Stance bonus during the Change Stance action, they Block at their normal skill dice.
- Actions listed with an **agg** are performed at half the character’s skill dice while in Defensive stance. Rounded down. Thus if a character with a B5 Spear skill in Defensive stance wants to Strike his opponent he rolls two dice.

Once in Defensive stance, all applicable skills and stats get the bonus/penalties. A character with a B4 Spear skill, a B3 Brawling and a B4 Speed has: 6D to Block and Counterstrike (Spear +2D). He has 2D for Strikes, Great Strikes and Disarming Strikes (Spear -2D). His Brawling skill is B5 for Blocks and Counterstrikes, and it is B1 for Strikes, Great Strikes and Disarming Strikes. His Speed counts as 6D for Avoids (B4 Speed +2D).

- Neutral maneuvers and Natural Defenses are not affected by Defensive stance bonuses or penalties.

### Natural Defenses

Occasionally during a combat situation, an attack will hit a character in a way that she was not prepared for. Even so, she would not just sit idly and let herself be molested. There are natural, defensive reactions a body will take without being told to. For example, if a person is knocked off balance the feet and legs involuntarily shift position to try to remain standing. Or if a person is grabbed it is basic instinct to pull away. Thus, if a character is Thrown, Locked, Pushed, Got Inside of, or Charged she is allowed a Natural Defenses roll to resist the attack. The Natural Defenses are listed with the individual descriptions.

These Natural Defenses do not cost an action in the script. They only happen when another character tries to Get Inside, Lock, Push, Throw or Charge your character. Natural Defenses are not penalized by nor benefit from Aggressive or Defensive stance.

Natural Defenses is always a versus test. If the attacking player generates more successes, then the maneuver is successful—the victim is pushed, locked, thrown or what have you. If the defending player rolls more successes, then the attack is warded off. Ties go to the defender.
Block/Parry

To block or parry, the defender makes a versus skill test against the attacker’s Strike. Each Block success knocks off one Strike success. To completely ward off a Strike, the defender must roll an equal number of successes to the attacker’s Strike. (Or reduce the attacker’s successes below the obstacle for the Strike.) Any attacking successes not Blocked are considered to hit the character in the form of a partially blocked Strike.

Swordsman and Witchhunter are going at it again. Swordsman has a Strike scripted and Witchhunter has a Block in her script. Swordsman has a B5 Sword skill, he rolls three successes on his Strike. Witchhunter has a B4 Sword skill, she rolls two successes on her Block. Two successes are knocked off the incoming Strike, leaving one remaining. The Strike obstacle is 1—the attack gets through Witchhunter’s defenses.

Blocking with Two-Handed Weapons

Blocking with two-handed weapons is different from parrying with a sword or blocking with a fist. Axes, hammers and other polearms can raise a block like any other weapon/martial skill. However, if a wielder of a two-handed weapon does raise a Block, on their next action they may not Strike with the main element of the weapon. Rather, characters may Hilt-Strike, set for a Great Strike, or use another non-Strike action. If the character chooses to Block again, he is still limited to the above options. This limit does not apply to spears and staves.

Change Stance

Each stance affects the character’s performance in combat. Characters remain “in stance” until they script an action to drop it, change it, or sprint. It requires one action to change stance.

- Characters cannot change or maintain stance while sprinting. If a character sprints from a stance, his stance reverts to neutral. Of course he may choose to Change Stance again when finished sprinting.
- Stance bonuses are not applied until the action following the Change Stance action.

Witchhunter decides she would fare better against Swordsman using defensive maneuvers and clever stratagem. She scripts, Change Stance: Defensive. (During that action she counts as Blocking at her basic skill dice.) After that action she is considered in Defensive Stance.

Martial Actions

Avoid

A defender may attempt to get his body and limbs completely out the way of an attack. This move involves taking a retreating or side step. It is a versus test pitting the defender’s Speed against the attacker’s skill. Avoiders move away or to the side a number of paces equal to their dash rate. (When Avoiding a character is always considered to be moving at his jog/dash rate for the volley, regardless of what other movement is scripted.) Avoiders must retreat.

Witchhunter fears the Swordsman’s blade. So she scripts an Avoid, the Swordsman scripts a Strike. Witchhunter’s Speed is B5, she rolls 3 successes. Swordsman’s expert skill is a B5, he also rolls three successes—but Witchhunter’s Avoid knocks off three of his successes. It is at least an Obstacle 1 to strike an opponent, thus Swordsman’s strike successes have been reduced below the needed obstacle by Witchhunter’s Avoid. Therefore Witchhunter evades the hit. However, she is forced back a pace...towards the edge of a looming cliff!

Unlike Blocks and Counterstrikes, Avoids happen whether the opponent Strikes or not. (Thus a character always makes a retreating dash move when an Avoid is scripted.)

Avoiding In

Sometimes a savvy player will have his character Avoid into a Strike to get him closer to or past his opponent. This is acceptable. However, doing so is a difficult and dangerous maneuver. The GM should raise the obstacle for the Avoid by at least one. (The first success of the avoid is discounted. The rest are counted against the incoming Strike.) If the character fails to Avoid in, then he is forced to take a retreating step.
**Gameplay**

**Charge**

With this action the attacker runs and throws his body into his target with the intent of moving the target with the force of impact. *Characters must be sprinting for the volley they have the Charge action scripted.* Charger tests Power (+1D for every volley sprinted after the first, up to a maximum bonus equal to half his Speed) vs opponent’s Speed or Power. The attacker knocks his target back one pace for each success he generates over the target’s Natural Defenses. If the attacker knocks the defender back *more than one pace*, then the defender is knocked down. If the defender wins the versus test, the attacker stops and must spend an action hesitating. This maneuver does not do any damage. However, if the defender is knocked into a wall or is charged by something spiky the GM should consider damage for the attack.

Most character’s will resist a Charge with Speed, it is the natural inclination to get out of the way of a charging bull. However, a character who is physically bigger, or just more solid, than his attacker may use Power for his Natural Defenses.

*Witchhunter* leads off with a Charge. He rolls his B4 Power plus 1D for each volley he has been sprinting, in this case two, for a total of six dice! He gets 3 successes as he plows into *Witchhunter*.*Witchhunter* now tries to keep her feet. She rolls her Natural Defenses dice—her B5 Speed versus a Charge—and gets one success. This reduces *Swordsman’s* successes to two, but that is still enough to knock *Witchhunter* to the ground.

**Tackle: Get Inside on the Charge**

A character may opt to use the Charge action as a sort of Get Inside, or Tackle as we like to call it. Tackles must be scripted, a player must state if he wants his character to Get Inside on the Charge. If not stated, the character is assumed to be performing a normal Charge. An attempt to Tackle means that the Charging character opts to go down with his opponent and stay on her. The mechanics are exactly the same as for a Charge. If the Charger wins, then he is on the Inside. (If the defender is knocked/back down by the Charge, the attacker goes with her.) If the defender wins the versus test, then she may decide whether or not to allow the Charger on the Inside—remember, a failed Charge causes one action of hesitation.

**Counterstrike**

Using this maneuver, a defender divides his skill dice between Block and Strike in one action. A player must declare how he will divide his dice between the Strike and Block before any dice are rolled.

*Swordsman* scripts a Counterstrike to *Witchhunter’s* incoming Strike. His Sword skill is B5, he chooses to allot 3D to Block and 2D to Strike. When

**Disarming Strike**

The attacker attempts to knock a weapon or object out of defender’s hand by striking at the hand or arm. Obstacle is target’s skill or Agility exponent (depending on the circumstance). If the attacker is successful he knocks the target item away. This maneuver does not do any damage.

*Witchhunter* has had enough of *Swordsman’s* pathetic antics. He is in Aggressive Stance and scripts a Disarming Strike. *Swordsman*’s Obstacle is 4 (Witchhunter’s Sword Skill) he rolls four successes, meeting his obstacle! *Witchhunter’s* sword clatters to the ground.

**Expanded Disarming Strike Example**

*Witchhunter* has scripted a Counterstrike to *Swordsman’s* Disarming Strike. She allocates two dice to Block, two dice to Strike. *Witchhunter’s* Counterstrike is triggered by the incoming Disarming Strike. She rolls one success on her Block, reducing *Swordsman’s* total successes to three, one below his obstacle. *Swordsman* was so close. Now, *Witchhunter* rolls two dice for the riposte of her counterstrike. She scores two successes and hits *Swordsman*!

**Feint**

Feint draws the defender out from a Counterstrike or Block. Defender is faked out of position and attacker hits him while he is vulnerable. *Feint automatically foils Counterstrike or Block.* In addition, the Feinter may attack the defender as if he had scripted a Strike. Defender may not defend in anyway. If no Block or Counter is thrown by the defender on the action the Feint is scripted, then the Feinter hesitates and does not act. Feint is a neutral maneuver that can be used equally well in either stance.

*Swordsman* opts to Feint. *Witchhunter* has scripted a Block—Swordsman catches her out of position. Feint beats Block. *Swordsman* then rolls his B5 Sword skill as if he had landed an unopposed Strike on his opponent. Very nasty!
Characters may also be Thrown “outside” or Pushed off. In either of these cases remaining Get Inside successes don’t count. But Natural Defenses are used against the move. If the defending character resists the Throw or Push, then the two are still stuck together.

Scripting “Get Inside, Lock”

Often, a player will script the sequence “Get Inside, Lock” in a single volley. If the character fails his attempt to Get Inside he is seemingly left flailing out in nowhere—his next action is useless. The same is true if a character is already Inside and has scripted “Lock, Lock” for her volley. If she is fended off and pushed “Outside,” then her second action is useless. The rules of Action Reaction in Burning Wheel clearly state that the character must forfeit actions to rescript because she is forced out of position. Unfortunately, this makes it inordinately difficult to Get Inside and Lock opponents.

Since these actions are very similar, there is a special consideration for the case of Lock and Get Inside. In my experience running this game, I have found it acceptable to allow the player to “devolve” a Lock to a “Get back Inside” without forfeiting. Consider the “Get Inside” action to be the first stage of a two-action maneuver consisting of sliding into your opponent, getting your arms around him, and then attempting to apply pressure to subdue him. With this in mind it makes perfect sense to allow players to “devolve” Locks into “Get back Inside” maneuvers as they grapple with an opponent, shift grips and vie for position.

Great Strike

Certain weapons are capable of being used to attack with greater force than a standard Strike: axes, *katana*, bastard swords and so forth are a few examples. A Great Strike takes one action to set and another to deliver. Readying a Great Strike indicates that the wielder is shifting his grip on his weapon and getting it over his head. He may not do anything else on that action except move and speak. A Great Strike adds one pip of damage to the Incidental, Mark and Superb results of the character’s damage potential. See Weapons Mechanics for more on IMS. See the Weapons Appendix for a list of weapons that may Great Strike.

- A character can deliver the Great Strike while moving.
- A Great Strike may not be Blocked.

Lock

Lock can only be executed on the Inside. See Get Inside, above. Once the attacker is inside she may attempt to apply a Lock. Test attacker’s Power (or skill if applicable) vs the defender’s Natural Defenses Agility or Power (defender’s...
Damaging Locks

If an attacker manages to completely immobilize his opponent by reducing one of his stats to zero, then he may attempt to damage his victim. Once immobilized, roll to apply pressure (Power/skill vs Natural Defenses), only now additional successes count as if the attacker had struck his victim. Use the attacker’s IMS for unarmed attacks. See Weapons Mechanics for more on damage.

Push

Rather than lash out to do damage, an attacker may attempt to Push or check his opponent. It is a maneuver generally done with the arms or upper-body. Test Power or applicable skill vs Power or Speed. For every success the attacker wins by, the defender is pushed back one pace. If the defender is pushed more than two paces he falls prone.

- Push cannot be Blocked but may be Avoided or Counterstriked. Push counts as a Strike for the purposes of Counterstrikes. Push is a neutral move and can be made in any stance, from standard striking distance or from the Inside.

Witchhunter attempts to Push Swordsman off his feet. She rolls her B5 Brawling skill vs Swordsman’s B4 Forte. Witchhunter gets four successes to Swordsman’s two. Swordsman staggers back 2 paces but does not fall over.

Strike

Strike is the term used to describe an attacker’s assault. It does not necessarily mean one single punch. It can represent a single blow or a series of quick blows. It is up to the striker’s idiom. Attacker tests martial arts, Brawling or a weapons skill; base obstacle is 1 plus any modifiers such as moving or lunging.

Swordsman hacks away at Witchhunter with his broadsword. His Sword skill is B5 so he rolls 5 dice vs his obstacle. The more successes he gets the more likely he is to get through Witchhunter’s defenses; the more successes that get through the more damage he does.

Hilt Strike

Many weapons cannot Strike consecutively due to their weapon speed. However, these weapons may use their hilt, pommel or butt to strike rather than the “blade edge.” Thus, Strike, Hilt Strike, Strike is an acceptable script for Slow weapons. (See Weapons Mechanics for more on weapon speed.)
Gameplay

Throw

A character must be on the Inside to Throw his opponent. Characters must have Brawling, Boxing or a martial arts skill to throw.

Once Inside, a Throw is a versus test between the thrower’s skill and the defender’s skill. The attacker throws the defender one pace for every success in excess of the defender’s successes. Ties go to the defender. If a character is thrown more than one pace, she is knocked off her feet.

Witchhunter Gets Inside on Swordsman. Swordsman is angry about this and attempts to Throw her off. He tests his B3 Brawling skill vs Witchhunter’s B5 Speed. Swordsman rolls three successes! Witchhunter botches it and rolls one success. She is tossed two paces away and lands on her arse. She’s in big trouble now!

• Throwing an opponent into a wall, a door or the ground can really hurt. See Materials and Structures, Thrown into a Wall in Expanded Gameplay for more on damage from Throws.

Martial Move vs Move

Here is a breakdown of which moves work against which:

• Counterstrikes work against Strikes, Great Strikes, Disarming Strikes, and Pushes
• Feints only work against Counterstrikes and Blocks.
• Blocks work against Strikes and Disarming Strikes.
• AVOIDS work against all offensive maneuvers.

If a character raises a Block and his adversary Counterstrikes nothing happens. The opponents glare at each other over raised fists.

Weapons Mechanics

This system breaks weapons down into three categories: Melee Weapons; Bows, Crossbows and Guns; and Thrown Weapons. While all of the basic weapons stats are the same, each category has its own particular mechanics.

Melee weapons are rated according to four attributes: Weapon Power, Add, Weapon Speed and Versus Armor. Add and Versus Armor come into play after you have landed a hit. Weapon Speed determines how often you may try to hit, and Power determines the severity of the hit. Bows, Crossbows, and Guns, have a set IMS and use Versus Armor, but don’t use Weapon Speed or Add at all. Rather they use a damage mechanic called the Die of Fate. Thrown weapons use Weapon Power and Versus Armor like Melee weapons, but they also use the Die of Fate rather than Add. These weapon types and terms are discussed in detail below.

Damage = IMS

One element ties weapons together, they all rate damage on the same scale and use the IMS. Each weapon, melee or missile, has three possible levels of damage it can inflict: Incidental, Mark and Superb. Each result reflects the degree of effectiveness to which the weapon was used in the current attack.

Essentially, anything that can hurt a character has an IMS, whether it is a fist, sword, bow, spell or a thrown rock. Before we move on it is important to take a look at exactly what IMS is.

Incidental

Glancing hits, nicks, scrapes, duffs and cuffs. Incidental damage is equal to the Mark Hit result (see below) divided by two and rounded up. A character with a Pow B4 wielding a sword (Weapon Power +3) has an Incidental result of B4 (+3⇒7. 7÷2=3.5 rounded up to 4). For bare-fisted attacks a character with a B4 Power has an Incidental result of B2.

Mark

Mark Hit. This represents a shot that has hit its target with good force and fair accuracy. Mark hit damage is the total of the character’s Power plus the weapon’s Power. A character with a Pow B4 wielding a sword (Weapon Power +3) has a Mark result of B7. A character with a B4 Power has a Mark result of B4 for bare-fisted attacks.
**Weapon Power**

Melee weapons are listed with a “Power” rating. This number is added to the character’s Power to determine how much damage is done with a Strike and so forth. Damage is discussed under the Damage=IMS heading of this section.

**Power Shade**

Like stats and skills, **Weapon Power** is divided into two components, the shade and the exponent. Unless explicitly stated otherwise all weapons are of mundane caliber and do damage in the black shade.

**Ok, I’ve Got This Funny Number Stuff Down, Now What?**

- The IMS numbers represent coordinates on the *Physical Tolerances* Grayscale. Basically, they tell you how much hurt you put on your enemy. When a character scores a Mark result of B7, his opponent notes a B7 on his Grayscale. See Anatomy of Injury for more fun on the effects of damage on characters.

---

**Melee Weapons**

**Sample Melee Weapon**

**Weapon Type:** Sword  
**Power:** +3  
**Add:** 2  
**WS:** Slow  
**VA:** 1

See the Weapons Appendix for a complete listing of weapons stats.

**Striking Your Opponent**

To hit another character, test Brawling, Boxing, martial arts, or the appropriate weapons skill. The base obstacle to land a blow on an opponent is Ob1—a character always needs one success to hit. If the character meets his obstacle he has landed an Incidental Hit; if he exceeds his obstacle he can score a Mark or Superb result. If he fails to meet the obstacle, then the swing goes wide and misses.

See the Combat Obstacle Modifiers section for more on this. Also the Skill List in the Character Burner has example obstacles for Sword and Boxing skills.

If a character does not have a weapon skill or martial arts-type skill, then use Beginner’s Luck and tests against his Agility at a double obstacle penalty.

---

**Successes Needed for IMS Result by Add of Weapon**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add of Weapon</th>
<th>Incidental</th>
<th>Mark</th>
<th>Superb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Base Ob</td>
<td>Ob+1</td>
<td>Ob+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add 1</td>
<td>Base Ob+1</td>
<td>Ob+2</td>
<td>Ob+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add 2</td>
<td>Base Ob+2</td>
<td>Ob+3</td>
<td>Ob+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add 3</td>
<td>Base Ob+3</td>
<td>Ob+4</td>
<td>Ob+5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add is not “obstacle.” The Add sets a scale for the character to climb. If a character with an Add 2 weapon gets three successes, she scores a Mark result. If she only gets two successes, she scores an Incidental; five successes is a Superb.

**Weapon Speed**

Melee weapons are divided into three categories of speed and “handiness;” *fast* weapons, *slow* weapons and *unwieldy* weapons. These categories limit how often these weapons may Strike in the script.

- Fast weapons may Strike every action as desired.

---

**Superb**

Superb shots are so well placed that they have unintended effectiveness: a major artery is hit, a hand gets cut off, and so forth. Superb damage is one-and-a-half times the Mark result. *Round down; fractions are discarded.* A character with a Pow B4 wielding a sword (Weapon Power +3) has a Superb result of B10. A character with a B4 Power has a Superb result of B6 for bare-fisted attacks.
Bedknobs, Broomsticks and Other Found Weapons

Almost anything can be used as a weapon. A table lamp can make a fine club and a pencil can poke an eye out.

Characters without a martial arts skill may test against their Agility at a double obstacle penalty to use found weapons. Characters with Brawling, Boxing, or martial arts may test their skill at no penalty when using a found weapon.

Figuring IMS for found weapons is the same as for any other melee weapon. The Add for found weapons is 2. See the Weapons Appendix for a complete list.

Bows, Crossbows and Guns

Hitting the Target

When a character wishes to shoot a bow, crossbow or firearm at a target he tests his appropriate skill against a base Ob 1 plus any modifiers for range, movement, conditions, etc. If a character doesn’t have the appropriate skill he may test Agility at a double obstacle penalty. Once the character has hit the target, roll the Die of Fate for the applicable weapon type and apply the resulting IMS damage to the target.

Sample Ranged Weapon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon Type</th>
<th>Hunting Bow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Long Range:</td>
<td>100 paces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I: B4</td>
<td>M: B7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S: B10</td>
<td>VA: -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOF: 1-2:</td>
<td>Incidental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3+: Mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5+: Superb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Die of Fate: Going from Mark to Superb

Bows, crossbows, and so forth are a little unpredictable in their effects. When firing one of these weapons it is unlikely that the result can be precisely predicted or exactly duplicated every time; there are just too many odd

Melee Weapon Speed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fast Weapons</th>
<th>Slow Weapons</th>
<th>Unwieldy Weapons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fists, bottles</td>
<td>Lead pipes</td>
<td>Primitive axes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brass knuckles</td>
<td>Maces</td>
<td>Cloaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Razors, knives</td>
<td>Rifle-butts</td>
<td>Chairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daggers</td>
<td>Sword hilts</td>
<td>Garden shears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katana</td>
<td>Axes, gaives, bills</td>
<td>Heavy chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spears</td>
<td>Machetes</td>
<td>Run-of-the-mill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Billy clubs</td>
<td>Broadwords, etc.</td>
<td>warhammers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stools</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brooms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Versus Armor (VA)

VA stands for Versus Armor. It is a measure of how well the weapon penetrates armor. VA is discussed in detail in the Armor and Shields section.

Beat on the Brat…

Weapon Type: Billy club
Power: +2  Add: 2  WS: Fast  VA: -

A billy club is a suitable weapon for all occasions. Though it probably won’t kill someone in one shot, it has the potential to knock someone’s socks off. Billy clubs have a Power of 2 and an Add of 2. Thus a fella with a Pow B4 does an Incidental hit of B3, a Mark hit of B6, and a Superb of B9. (B4+2=6, I: 6÷2= B3, M: B4+2= B6, S: B4+2 = 6 x 1.5 = B9.) And, as you will later see, a B9 hit is usually enough to put someone in a coma.

The Add is 2: For every two successes over the obstacle the damage is bumped up one level, from Incidental to Mark and Mark to Superb.

A billy club’s main strength lies in its speed. It is a fast weapon capable of delivering rapid, powerful blows.
Thrown Weapons

Thrown Weapons are the bastard children of melee and missile weapons. They use weapon Power like melee weapons and Die of Fate IMS like missile weapons, but their ranges are determined by the type of weapon thrown and the wielder's Power.

Thrown weapons with a Power of “zero” use the wielder’s IMS as if it were for a bare-fisted strike. Otherwise add the Weapon Power to the character’s Power as normal. Most thrown weapons have no VA rating, making them tough to use against armored opponents.

Sample Thrown Weapon
Small Throwing Knife: Pow: 0; VA: –.

A character with a Pow of B4 tossing a Throwing Knife has an IMS: I: B2; M: B4; S: B6; and has these ranges: Lob: 4 paces; Throw: 12 paces; Hurl: 16 paces.

See the Weapons Appendix for a complete listing of Thrown Weapon types.

Lob, Throw, Hurl

There are three ways a character may loose a thrown weapon: Lob, Throw and Hurl. Each throw goes farther and costs more actions to perform in the script. See Action Reaction for more on the Lob/Throw/Hurl action.

Thrown Weapon Ranges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Pointblank Lob</th>
<th>Throw</th>
<th>Hurl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baseball</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small knives</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighted knives</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuriken</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelin</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All Ranges are in Paces. All Multipliers are based on character's Power.
Distance of the throw is based on the weapon being thrown. Power of character and type of throw. Power exponent times the multiplier for the individual weapon’s type of throw is the distance of the throw in paces.

Von Goten is desperate, he scoops a big rock (Pow +2, VA –; Range: x1, x3, x6) off the ground and hurls at an approaching zombie. The squire’s Power is B6, so his Lob range is 6 paces, his Throw range is 18 paces and his Hurl range is 36 paces.

Von Goten rolls his Agility (he doesn’t have a Throwing skill) at a double obstacle penalty. The zombie is 10’ (3.5 paces) away—within the squire’s Lob range. Thus it is Ob 2 to hit the creature (base obstacle + plus the double obstacle penalty). He rolls three successes and hits. Now he rolls the DOF on the Bricks chart below to see what wound he’s done. He rolls a 4 on the DOF and does his Mark result damage. Von Goten’s IMS with a brick is: I B4, M B7, S B10. A B7 is enough to snap a zombie arm! “Icky zombies, take that!”

**Thrown Weapon Die of Fate**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bricks, Rocks, Axe DOF</th>
<th>Knives, Shuriken DOF</th>
<th>Javelins DOF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-3 Incidental</td>
<td>1-2 Incidental</td>
<td>1-2 Incidental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5 Mark</td>
<td>3-5 Mark</td>
<td>3-4 Mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Superb</td>
<td>6 Superb</td>
<td>5-6 Superb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Drawing Thrown Weapons**

No, not sketching them. When a character spends actions drawing a thrown weapon (see Action/Reaction), he may draw multiple items from his sleeve, scabbards, pouches or what have you. The list below details how many items the character may draw and hold in his hands at the ready.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thrown Weapons in Hand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Small knives: 2 per hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighted knives: 1 per hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocks, Bricks: 1 per hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelin, Axe: 1 per hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuriken: 5 per hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spikes: 4 per hand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See the Weapons Appendix for a complete listing of thrown weapons.
Armor and Shields

The armor rules in Burning Wheel take into account both the sturdiness of the protection worn and how much of the body is covered.

What Should I Wear to the Battle?  
An Explanation of Armor Types

The armor types provided here are general archetypes and genres of armor designed to represent a variety of instances, both historical and fantastic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Armor Types</th>
<th>DN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skins, Hides, Leather and Quilted Armor</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plated, Reinforced Leather</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chainmail</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plated Mail</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Leathers and Quilting—Gambesons, cloth and padded armor, and thin, boiled leather. This armor is cheap, easy to make and effective when enough is worn.

Plated and Reinforced Leather—Pieces of light chainmail or lamellar are built into or onto hardened leather coverings that are worn over a cloth gambeson. This is probably the most popular armor for foot soldiers world-wide. It is fairly cheap and very effective; it can stop all but the most powerful blows.

Chainmail—Interlocking rings form a shirt, hood, sleeves, skirt and leggings all worn over leather or cloth padding—which provides protection from impact and from the armor itself. More often than not, the chain is covered by a decorative outer layer of cloth as well. Chainmail is versatile, effective, heavy and expensive.

Plated Mail—Using the same basic kit as chainmail certain areas are reinforced with hard metal plates. Usually a breast and back plate are added, as well as arm and leg greaves. This armor is extraordinarily expensive and very effective.

Armor Pieces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Armor Pieces</th>
<th>Coverage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Helmet (Head)</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mask (Face and Neck)</td>
<td>1D*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vest (Torso)</td>
<td>2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacket, Hauberk (Torso and Arms)</td>
<td>3D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloves (Hands)</td>
<td>1D*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leggings (Legs and Hips)</td>
<td>2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boots (Feet and Ankles)</td>
<td>1D*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Boots, Gloves and a Mask when worn together, as part of a suit of armor, add +1D total. If worn individually they only count as defending against called shots, not toward the overall armor dice.

Note: A character can never have more than 7 dice of armor.

Add up the dice from the individual armor pieces to get the total Protection dice. Players roll those dice every time their characters are struck by an incoming attack.

Rolling Armor Protection Dice

When a character who is wearing armor is struck by an opponent’s weapon, the armored one may roll Protection dice to ward off the blow. Roll the total number of dice for the armor worn. The obstacle for the test is 1, the DN is according to the armor type (see Armor Types above). It does not matter how effective the attacker’s Strike is; as long as the armor gets one success the attack is deflected and no damage is done. If no successes are generated on the Protection dice, then the attack gets through and does damage as normal.

Von Goten is shot by an Orc bow. The squire is wearing a Helmet (1D), Chainmail Leggings (2D), and a Chainmail Hauberk (3D) for a total of 6 dice at DN 4. Von Goten’s player rolls six Protection dice and needs one 4 to ward off the hunting arrow.

Mixed Armors

A character is free to wear whatever types of armor she wishes on whatever parts of her body she desires. The exact types and locations should be noted on the armor dummy on page three of the character sheet.
There are two ways to play mixed armors. Total the dice for all the protection worn and take the average DN for all the armor types worn; this is the Protection that this suit of armor affords. Or when the player is testing the Protection dice roll different colored dice—each color to represent a different DN of armor.

**Weapons Versus Armor**

Certain forms of armor offer better protection against different types of attack. A leather hauberk might stop a club but will provide little protection from a plunging spear.

To reflect this, weapons are listed with a “Versus Armor” (VA) value. VA is rated from 0-4 and tells the attacker how effective his shot will be against the defending armor. For each point of VA raise the DN of the defender’s Protection dice test by one. If the DN is raised above 6, the defender cannot use armor to deflect the shot.

*Von Goten is struck by a crossbow bolt. He is wearing 6D of chainmail armor. The bolt has a VA of 1, which raises his DN from 4 to 5. Von Goten rolls six dice, at DN 5, and comes up with one success, enough to deflect the bolt and save his life.*

*Later the squire is caught wooing a lady. He is not wearing his chainmail harness, rather he is wearing simple gambeson (DN 6). The lady’s other suitor takes issue and strikes Von Goten with a sword (VA 1). The VA raises Von Goten’s Protection DN from 6 to 7. The cloth gambeson cannot protect him from this blow.*

**Power and VA**

When an exceptionally strong character uses a weapon, he can add to its armor penetration value. Power with an Exp 7 or higher adds +1 VA.

*A long time ago, Von Goten made the mistake of angering a sleeping troll. Before he realized what he had done, the troll whacked Von Goten with a big stick. Sticks (aka clubs) have no VA. However, the troll’s Power B7 gives him a VA 1, raising Von Goten’s armor DN by one (from 4 to 5).*

*Some time after the troll incident Von Goten and his liege, Sir Tristam, were sent to apprehend a rogue knight. This knight was infamous for being tremendously strong. Von Goten didn’t believe the rumors...until this infamous knight crashed his sword into the squire’s chest. The rogue knight had a Power B7 and a sword (VA 1), for a total of VA 2. This raised Von Goten’s armor DN from 4 to 6—he needed a 6 on one die to ward off the attack. Von Goten has since vowed only to pick on weaklings.*

**Armor Failure**

When testing Protection, any die that comes up a 1 indicates that the armor has become damaged. It does not matter if the blow got through or if the armor deflected it—if a 1 is rolled subtract one die (-1D) from the overall Protection dice of the character’s armor. *Only one die can be lost per attack (unless the GM says otherwise).* The GM determines what piece of armor was damaged by the incoming attack.

Armor failure is *not* some strange phenomenon where your armor is stripped from your body so that eventually you are fighting naked and helpless. In the fray many things can go wrong, and they usually do when someone is whacking at you with a five-pound, sharpened-steel club! Armor failure rules represent a variety of events that occur when the armor is hit and “fails.”

*Helmets are a favorite target in the press of battle. And that is why one wears them, otherwise the target would be your head! Heavy blows to the noggin can burst the helmet’s chin strap and cause it to fly right off. Also, the interior webbing of the helmet can tear, leaving the metal sitting against the pate, and making the next blow to the head very painful. Helmets get dented and bashed in, leaving sharp or rough edges pressing against the tender bits of your soft skull. And when your visor is pressing into your cheek, that next blow is going to really hurt; thus, even though the piece is still there it no longer provides the protection it should.*

*Failure for leather and padded armor usually involves the piece becoming torn and useless or having straps burst, leaving it flapping in the wind and your bottom exposed.*

*For metal armor, failure is much the same as for helmets: The piece gets knocked in so it no longer functions as it should, the piece gets ripped up, or the piece gets ripped off.*

Whatever the GM decides, it still results in -1D to an area of armor coverage. If there was no specific target or called shot, the GM determines the location. I usually like to start on the places most likely to be hit, like the head and arms and then work my way inward….

The attacker can hammer away on exposed areas, calling shots and bypassing the armor completely. However, the defender can also turn this to his advantage by “calling” his defense. See the Called Shot and Telegraphing rules in the Combat Mechanics section of Expanded Gameplay.
Clumsy Weight

Armor is bulky and restrictive, it incurs certain penalties when worn. When writing out a character’s gear be sure to note Clumsy Weight penalties next to the stats that are modified. Also if the character is wearing armored leggings, make a new average for the character’s Reflexes when he is in armor as opposed to his standard Reflexes.

Though there are no Clumsy Weight penalties noted for skills, armor affects skills in other ways. Let’s just say that it is very hard to write nice calligraphy while wearing spiky gauntlets; it is very hard to convince the librarian that you are calm, quiet and thoughtful while you are wearing a bloodstained, horned helmet; it is very hard to be inconspicuous during a court ball while wearing plated mail leggings. Obviously, armor affects skills in other ways than the Clumsy Weight penalties.

Specialized Armor Bits

In Burning Wheel, there are alternate bits of armor that don’t provide the same protection as the big pieces, but also don’t restrict movement as much either. Standard armor pieces count toward overall protection, count against “called shots,” and cause a stat penalty due to their protective bulk. Special bits do not count towards the overall armor rating. They only count if the area they cover is struck by a called shot. Also, specialized armor bits have reduced Clumsy Weight penalties. See Combat Mechanics in Expanded Gameplay for more on called shots.

Clumsy Weight Penalties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Armor Type</th>
<th>Clumsy Weight Penalties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapeau de Guerre, War Hat</td>
<td>+1 Ob Perception (DN 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helmets (Bascinets)</td>
<td>+2 Ob Perception (DN 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Helm</td>
<td>+4 Ob Perception (DN 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face Mask (for Helmets and Hats)</td>
<td>+1 Ob Perception†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armored Gloves</td>
<td>+2 Ob Agility*†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armored Leggings</td>
<td>-1D Speed†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plated, Studded Leather, etc.</td>
<td>+1 Ob Stealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chainmail</td>
<td>+2 Ob Stealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plated Mail</td>
<td>+3 Ob Stealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chain Leggings</td>
<td>Additional +1 Ob Stealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plated Mail Leggings</td>
<td>Additional +2 Ob Stealthy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Armored Gloves also give a +2 Ob to all fine hand dexterity manipulation skills like Slight of Hand, Bow or Potter.
†These above penalties count regardless of the type of armor worn.

Von Goten gets struck by the troll’s club. He rolls his 6D Protection and gets 5, 4, 4, 3, 1, 1. The 5 is a success; the blow has been deflected. However, the 1s indicated that the armor has “failed”—a piece has broken, ripped or fallen off. One die is subtracted from Von Goten’s Protection dice—in this case the GM determines that the squire’s helmet was knocked clean off. Next time he gets hit Von Goten will only roll 5D for Protection. Notice that, despite rolling two 1s, only one die is removed per hit.

Von Goten wears chainmail leggings as part of his armor kit. Thus he takes Speed tests at a -1D penalty. The penalty also affects his Reflexes, normally a B4 (B4 Per, Spd, Agi). The penalty reduces the average to B3 (B4 Per, B3 Spd, B4 Agi). The penalty does not affect skills in any way except as noted.
Shields give characters additional dice to Block (just like the melee maneuver). The dice are rolled and treated in (almost) the exact same way as skill dice. Note that shields may Block Great Strikes (warfans and parrying blades may not).

**Shield Block**

Von Goten Blocks a brigand’s cudgel with his Target Shield. He rolls his weapon skill, in this case his Sword skill of B5, plus two dice from the shield. His successes knock off the attacker’s Strike successes just like a normal Block.

**Strike and Block**

When a character with one of the above mentioned Training skills Strikes, he may divide his weapon skill dice between attack and defense in the same way as a Counterstrike. Basically, he is reserving momentum to be used in a Shield Block. These dice are combined with the “shield dice” and rolled against any incoming Strikes on that action like a normal Block. This is not considered an actual Counterstrike, nor is it a defensive maneuver.

**Shield Defense by the Numbers**

When declaring a Strike in melee, a character with Shield Training divides his skill dice between his Strike and his shield defense. Thus if a character has a Sword skill of B4 and a target shield (2D shield) he may: Strike with 3D from his Sword skill, and defend himself with 1D from his skill plus 2D from the shield. Or he may Strike with 2D of skill and defend with 2D of skill plus the 2D of the shield. Alternately, he may strike with all 4D of his skill and leave the shield’s 2D to work on its own. Any tests made using shield dice count as a Block and knock successes off incoming Strikes.

---

**Shield Dice and DN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shields</th>
<th>Dice</th>
<th>DN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buckler</td>
<td>1D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parrying Blade</td>
<td>1D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warfan</td>
<td>1D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>2D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heater</td>
<td>3D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Shield</td>
<td>3D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If Von Goten wore half leggings and a metal skullcap he could reduce his Clumsy Weight penalties. However, his Protection dice would be diminished accordingly. He would roll three dice for his Hauberk, plus one die for the half leggings. The skullcap would only come into play if another character attacked him directly on the noggin. In other words, if they “called” a shot to his head.

If Von Goten wore half leggings and a metal skullcap he could reduce his Clumsy Weight penalties. However, his Protection dice would be diminished accordingly. He would roll three dice for his Hauberk, plus one die for the half leggings. The skullcap would only come into play if another character attacked him directly on the noggin. In other words, if they “called” a shot to his head.

---

**Special Armor Bits**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coverage</th>
<th>Coverage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skullcap (Head)</td>
<td>1D, (DN 4,5,6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mask (Face and Neck)</td>
<td>1D*§</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assassin’s Gloves (Hands)</td>
<td>1D, DN 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boots (Feet and Ankles)</td>
<td>1D*§</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half Sleeves (Upper Arm)</td>
<td>1D*‡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half Leggings, Skirt (Legs and Hips)</td>
<td>1D*‡</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Half Sleeves and Leggings give half the dice of normal sleeves or leggings. They do count towards the overall Protection, but they do not cause a penalty to stats. Half sleeves and half leggings are worn in place of standard sleeves and leggings.

§ These pieces can be of any armor type. If purchasing special armor bits in Character Burning the player may choose what type of armor (what DN) they are, but the price of the whole suit of armor is equal to a whole suit of the heaviest piece or lowest DN.

‡ Also, any items made of Chainmail or Plated Mail still cause an obstacle penalty to Stealth.

**Note:** A character can never have more than 7 dice of Protection.

---

**Shields, Bucklers, Parrying Blades and Warfans**

The training skills Shield Training, Two-Fisted Fighting and Blazing Wings Technique cover the use of an off-handed “defensive” weapon—from parrying blades to great shields. These devices are used to deflect an incoming attack and allow the wielder to strike from safety and in a deadly manner. In this section “shield” is the blanket term used to describe all of these “defensive weapons.”
Shields and Versus Armor

All shields have a DN 4 (unless specially noted otherwise). Shields are affected by VA.

A parrying blade (1D/DN4) needs to roll a 6 against an incoming axe (VA 2) or a 5 against a sword (VA 1).

Skill dice put into blocking with a shield are not affected by VA. Roll different colored dice to represent the shield as opposed to the skill.

Shield Failure

Again, shields are the bridge between weapons and armor, so they get the best and worst of both worlds. Shields fail like armor. They can get wrapped back around your arm, knocked from your grasp or just splintered. When using a shield, if a shield die comes up 1 then the shield loses a die. It is dropped, broken or damaged. Skill dice 1s don’t count toward shield failure.

Shields and Melee Mechanics

Feints and Shields

Feint is a martial move that “counters” the Block and Counterstrike maneuvers. However, if a shielder throws a Strike with a few dice allocated to Shield Block and her opponent throws a Feint, the Feint does not bypass the shielder’s “Shield Block.” In fact, the feinter’s move is foiled as the shielder lashes out and Strikes. Feint only works against Block and Counterstrike, not Strike!

Counterstrikes and Shields

If a shielder throws a Strike and her opponent throws a Counterstrike, the counterstriker defends against the shielder’s Strike and gets to riposte (following the normal rules for Counterstrike). The shielder may use her Shield Block against the “strike half” of the counterstrike.

Shields and Stance

Shield dice are never affected by Stance modifiers.

Neutral Stance

In Neutral stance the shielder may divide her dice between Shield Block and Strike as she sees fit. Also, shields add their dice to any Blocks or to the defensive half of Counterstrikes. Shields are not used while Avoiding.

Skill dice may be divided between “attack” and “shield” on Strikes and Feints—that’s it.

Defensive Stance

Defensive Stance moves are conducted as normal with a shield. The defender adds the shield dice to any Blocks or Counterstrikes. Shields are not used for Avoids. Also, shield dice are not increased by the stance bonus.

If a cheeky defender tries to “Strike and Shield Block” from Defensive Stance, her shield counts as its normal dice. But she must Strike and Shield Block with half of her normal skill as per the standard Defensive stance rules. So if a character with a B4 Sword skill (and Shield Training) and a target shield is in Defensive stance and she Strikes she would have two dice to divide between her Strike and her Shield Block. After she divides her dice, then add in the 2D of shield dice from her target shield to her Shield Block.

Aggressive Stance

Characters in Aggressive Stance have a cap on how many dice they can put into a Shield Block. They may put a maximum of half their base skill dice into a Shield Block. Thus if a character with a B4 Sword skill is in Aggressive Stance, he gets 6D to Strike, but he may only use 2D of that total for a Shield Block (half his base skill).

Shields vs Rocks, Arrows, Bolts and Bullets

Shielders are not allowed to “block” incoming missile weapons. Instead, shields count as cover and raise the obstacle for all incoming missile fire. Characters can try to maximize the protection of their shield against missiles. There are two “modes” of shielding against missile fire—Normal and Hiding. Normal mode counts when the shield is being used to defend. Hiding means characters are scrunching down to get maximum cover. When hiding, shielders are considered to be heads down and not really moving, but there are some circumstances when a character can hide behind his shield and move.

The amount of cover offered depends on the size of the shield. Also, note that shields only offer cover from the shield side and the front; the “sword arm” and back are considered exposed. “Completely concealed” means that a character may hide his whole body behind the shield, an enemy character would have to fire through the shield to hit the hiding character. (See Materials in Expanded Gameplay for more on shooting through stuff.)
Anti-Shield

Shields got you down? Opponents blocking all your strikes? Arrows bouncing off? Well, here are a few solutions for your woes.

Articulated Weapons

Weapons like flails and three-section staves were designed to neutralize shields! A skilled user knows how to wrap the chain around a shield so the ball or stave smashes the shieldy in the skull! No shield defense against these weapons.

High-Powered Missiles

Guns and really heavy crossbows love shields. They love to go right through them! Any missile with a VA of 3 discounts shield cover. So guns at close range, longbows with armor-piercing arrows, and your friendly neighborhood siege crossbow all laugh at shields.

Shields on the Inside

Knights smashing your baddies to bits? Get Inside and stab them through their visors! Shields provide no defense on the Inside. However they can still be used to shield bash, so watch out! Check out the Get Inside rules in Melee Mechanics and striking distance in Combat Mechanics for more info.

There’s too Many of Them!

Shield Blocks count for all attackers striking on that action, as long as they are attacking from the front or shield facing of the shielder. Generally, shields cannot defend your “sword arm” side or your ass. So if your players are particularly good with their shields, swamp them from all directions!

Shield Notes

All of the assumptions in this section are based on the relative size of a human adult vs the standard size for the shield type listed. The basic idea is the larger the shield, the more cover/protection it can provide. There are other mitigating factors like weight and material but they have been accounted for. When adjusting the system, use common sense for relative values. Remember, a target shield for a man is a buckler on an Ogre and a great shield for a Hobbit.

Mantelets and pavises are not shields, they are big boards set up to provide cover for archers, crossbowmen and gunners. They do not fall under the shield rules, but are considered “cover” for the purposes of game play.
Taking the Hit

Registering Wounds on the PTGS

Every time a character takes a hit from a weapon (or other fun stuff) plot the IMS damage on the PTGS and note what tolerance it falls on. If the mark falls between two, then the player notes the effect for the left-most or lesser wound.

To mark a B3 wound: “B” tells the player that the wound falls in the Black section of the PTGS and “3” tells the player to mark the circle beneath the number 3, like so:

If this unfortunate fellow is mercilessly hit again and receives a B5 wound, it is marked separately, as a new wound, and its effects are added to wound modifiers he has already taken. Wounds are always considered to be separate entities and are not “added together,” however, the effects of wounds are compiled as an overall penalty for the character.

Once the wound is noted, consult the Anatomy of Injury chart at the top right of the character sheet and note the effects/penalties. Wounds can add to the DN for all tests or subtract dice from stats, skills and attributes.

Effects of Wounds

As each tolerance is crossed by a wound, the character is given penalties to his stats, skills, and attributes. The following chart gives the exact modifiers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Wound Modifiers</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial:</td>
<td>+1 DN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light:</td>
<td>+2 DN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midi:</td>
<td>-1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe:</td>
<td>-2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic:</td>
<td>-4D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortal:</td>
<td>Dice don’t matter here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**+3 DN**

Every “+3 DN” a character receives from wound modifiers count as one subtracted die. The +3 DN is cancelled—the character’s current DN returns to 4—and one die (-1D) is subtracted instead. Thus three superficial wounds do not give +3 DN, they actually subtract a die, just as if the character took a Midi wound. A Light and a Superficial Wound—+3 DN—subtract a die. The same goes for two Light wounds, +4 DN, which become -1D, +1 DN.

These wounds don’t have to be taken all at once for the +3DN rule to come into effect. Any time a character finds himself with a +3 (or greater) DN modifier, simply trade in +3 and subtract a die.

In the Taking the Hit section example, the character received a Superficial wound (+1 DN) and then shortly thereafter took a Light wound (+2 DN). The character’s player immediately compiles the +3 DN modifier into a -1D penalty. The character’s Reflexes, Steel, stats and skills are all considered to be one die lower now.

**Incapacitation**

When a stat drops to zero or below due to lost dice the character becomes incapacitated. He collapses due to pain and trauma and cannot act.

If it is a physical stat—Power, Forte, Agility or Speed—that has fallen to zero, then the character is rolling around drooling, in pain. He may still observe and even think. Maybe he can watch his enemy put the sword to his throat!

If the character is incapacitated from Perception or Will being reduced to zero, he is considered unconscious.

A character with a B4 Will (as his lowest stat) takes a Traumatic wound (-4D); he is instantly incapacitated. Or if he takes two Severe wounds (-2D+2D), he is incapacitated. Or if he takes four Midi wounds (4x -1D), he is beaten into unconsciousness. Or if he takes six Light wounds (+2 DN x6 =+12 DN, divided by three equals -4D). Or if he takes 24 Superficial wounds, he is ground down and knocked out. Of course these wounds can be taken in combination of any type, if the final die penalty is -4D this character blacks out.

Incapacitation is not a Mortal Wound or death. (A character is only instantaneously slain when he takes a Mortal wound.) If an incapacitated character is not in danger of bleeding to death or has been treated for his wounds, he will regain consciousness as he recovers from his wounds. However, most wounds will bleed, causing further damage through blood loss. A character incapacitated by a Severe wound or higher must he tended to or bleed to death.
Wounded dice and DN modifiers are not permanent. Characters can heal from wounds. Of course, if the character heals improperly, he can get stuck with permanent modifiers! Yippee, I've got scars and a limp! See Post Trauma.

There is no limit to how many wounds a character can take, just to how many he can withstand. The human body is a strange machine, unthinkably durable yet tremendously fragile. Be careful.

**Steel and Wounds**

When a character loses a die (-1D) due to wounds, he must pass a Steel test (Steel vs Hesitation obstacle). If a character loses multiple dice from a single wound each lost die after the first adds a +1 Hesitation obstacle to the Steel test.

If a character takes a Midi wound the player notes the effects (-1D) and makes a Steel test (with the wounded die penalty). If he fails to get successes, then he Hesitates immediately due to shock and pain.

**Bleeding**

If not tended to, Light wounds and higher will bleed and cause further damage to the character.

**The Continuing Effects of Wounds**

- **Superficial**– Treatment required within one day or risk infection.
- **Light**– Treatment required within one day or risk infection and scars. Certain Light wounds can progress to Midi through bleeding in 12 hours. They do not bleed to Severe as a normal Midi would, though.
- **Midi**– Attention is required within 12 hours or condition progresses to Severe. The wound ceases to bleed at Severe.
- **Severe**– If a Severe wound is not tended to within six hours the wound progresses to Traumatic.
- **Traumatic**– Traumatic wounds not treated within two hours progress to a Mortal Wound. Remember, a Traumatic wound means guts everywhere. Can you say, "breathing tubes"?
- **Mortal**– See the Will to Live section below.

**Blood Clock**

A wound begins to bleed as soon as it is received. The clock starts tickin’. The times listed above indicate how long the wounded character has before the wound bleeds to the next stage. After six hours of bleeding from a Severe Wound (-2D), a character suffers the effects of a Traumatic Wound (-4D). The wound is still considered Severe for treatment purposes.

If a wound bleeds through to Mortal the character bleeds to death.

As wound modifiers are cumulative, so are the effects of bleeding. A character with two Severe wounds is bleeding twice as fast as one with a single Severe wound. The injury will progress to the next wound stage in three hours rather than six hours.

Let’s say that our whipping boy from the previous examples is having a very bad day, most likely his last. He has taken two Midi wounds and a Traumatic wound. Ouch.

Normally, a Midi bleeds to Severe in twelve hours. But our boy was hit with two Midis, so he will bleed to Severe in six hours. But that’s nothing compared to the Traumatic wound. In two hours, this wound will bleed through to a Mortal, our whipping boy will gasp his last and slide slowly into death.

If someone happens upon his wretched, wrecked frame and deigns to tend his wounds the Blood Clock stops ticking (for the wound being tended). See Post Trauma in Expanded Gameplay for more on that.

**The Danger of Damage Stages**

This is an imperfect system of numbers and letters that represents vivid, inimitable experience. It is all too easy to fall into the trap of reciting numbers. That trap is a deadly one, because its poison is boredom and boredom kills games, not just characters. To ward off that deadly fate, wounds and their results must be colored and given real weight within the game and story so that players do not become inured. This system is “very deadly” compared to what most players are accustomed to; it makes an attempt to accurately reflect the effect of sharpened steel impacting the human frame—the pain, the disorientation and the debilitation. Real danger swirls around the characters, and unless color and life are evoked, the players will be shocked and disappointed when some unlucky numbers turn up and a character is dead.
G a m e p l a y

That said, I firmly believe that a heroic struggle is no struggle at all if life and death don’t hang in the balance. Let the blood flow, but let it flow red and vivid, not black and white. Let them feel the price they are paying for their struggle and let that bitter price sweeten the taste of victory.

Mortal Wounds and Death

A character who receives a wound that meets or exceeds his Mortal Wound tolerance is not necessarily instantly killed. He is knocked flat, incapacitated, no longer able to act or speak or even think—truly he is dying, but the Will to Live and the help of a doctor or a priest can pull him back from the edge of the pit.

The Will to Live

It is important that the player have a part in the decision as to whether the character lives or dies at this point. Character death is a chance for the player to move on in the game, but death by bad luck or poor dice is no fun at all. If the player decides (and the GM agrees) to struggle on with the mortally wounded character, then the player must spend two points of Artha for the Will to Live. If the character doesn’t have two points, he cannot recover from a Mortal Wound.

After the player buys the Will to Live, the character is granted one golden hour during which he hovers at death’s door. This hour is the only chance for a physician or priest to aid the dying soul. If no help can be found, then the character passes on. But if a doctor can make a successful test, she has either bought more time or even saved the wounded completely. See Post Trauma in Expanded Gameplay for more on treating wounds.

It is important that the GM have final say over Will to Live. A GM should not force a player to continue with a character he dislikes, but at the same time a GM should not let bad luck destroy a well-built character. Getting knocked in the head is bad, but living through it and recovering can be so much more fun! In most circumstances, it is much more enjoyable to let character live out the consequences of his actions than to give him the easy escape of early death.

That said, GMs be merciless and let the bodies fall. And the players? Be careful, be thoughtful and with a little luck you will live through it all.

Incantations

Magic: In Burning Wheel it is more than mere sleight of hand or smoke and mirror tricks. It is the evocation of unseen power set forth to do the bidding of an enlightened controller.

Magic is a force of nature—a fifth element that surrounds and binds the material and spiritual worlds as one. Sorcery, the control of this element, is a channeling of power. Using a language structured along cosmic and fundamental lines, a sorcerer reaches deep into himself and opens a portal to this unseen power, sculpts it and sends it forth to do his will. A sorcerer may perform acts unthinkable; see the unseen, hear the silent thoughts of another, create something from nothing, and change the very essence of being.

Gifted

In order to be able to cast spells in Burning Wheel, a character must have the Gifted trait or its equivalent. See the Character Burner for more on being Gifted and getting Traits.

Sorcery Is a Skill

Sorcery is a language, both written and spoken. When properly used it allows the sorcerer control over nearly anything. The Sorcery skill is also used to decipher wizardly texts, develop spells, and research new spells.

The Sorcery skill cannot be spontaneously learned like other skills. It must be taught, passed down from a master to a student.

Spell Weaver

Sorcery combines both skill and self-control in a way that other skills do not. Always roll Sorcery plus Will when casting a spell. All of the dice of the test are open-ended.

Incantations

An incantation is a spoken spell. A Gifted character does not need anything but her voice to be able to incant; no other materials are required. It may be shouted, sung or whispered, so long as it is clear.
Syllables and Time

Each Incantation has a number of syllables that must be spoken for the spell to be properly cast. Speaking these syllables takes time—only two syllables may be spoken for every action. (See Action Reaction for more on Reflexes and actions.)

Han has Reflexes of B4 and he casts an 8-syllable spell. This spell takes him four actions (two syllables per action). If he casts a 5-syllable spell, it takes three actions. (two syllables per action, plus the remainder syllable which takes up another action.)

\[ x \text{ Syllables} \]

When a spell is listed with “\(x\) syllables,” multiply the syllables times the obstacle to get the basic casting time.

Syllables and casting time may be modified by how the spell is cast. See Advanced Spell Casting for different ways to cast a spell.

Range

Range indicates where the spell can start. It’s the point of origin—how far away from the caster the spell can be thrown and still have its intended effect. There are three types of ranges: Personal, Presence, Sight.

Personal Range

Spells with Personal Range can only be cast on the caster.

Presence

If the caster could speak to the recipient in a normal speaking voice and be understood (regardless of other ambient noise), then the recipient is in Presence of the Caster. Thus the caster’s Presence does not go through walls. A caster’s exact Presence is equal to his Will exponent in paces.

Presence is extended by one pace by each of the following skills or traits that the caster possesses: Meditation, Conspicuous, Command, Aura of Fear, Aura of Determination, Aura of Malevolence, Aura of Holiness, Commanding Aura, Perfect Pitch, Sonorous Voice, Uctuons, Bodhisattva, Gift of Babel.

Presence is reduced by one pace for each of the following: Inconspicuous, Stealthy, Misplaced Aura, Obscure Aura, Cipher, or Entropic.

Han has a Will of B6, he has the Meditation skill which increases Presence by one. However, he also has the Inconspicuous and Stealthy skills which reduce his Presence by two for a final Presence of five paces.
Factoring damage for spells that have Damaging/Destroyer Effect (DE) is similar to factoring damage for weapons. The wizard’s Will stat is the base Power of the attack, the spell is the weapon. IMS is factored just like melee damage. Thus a wizard with a B5 Will has a I: B3, M: B5, and S: B7 for DE spells. Additional successes create the Weapon Power. For example, if a wizard gets three more successes than needed he adds three to the base Power, or Mark result, of the spell—in this case three successes is a Mark of B8, an Incidental of B4 and Superb of B12.

Exact Damaging Effects are described in the individual spell entries in the Character Burner Spell List. Some spells modify base Power, subtracting dice or use a fraction of the Power; some spells add to Power in various ways; some are +1 Power per extra success, and some are +1 Power per two extra successes.

Like bows and crossbows, spells use the Die of Fate to determine IMS. All spells have a DOF of: I: 1-2, M: 3-4, S: 5-6.

Enhancing
The Enhancing Impetus grants a boon to its Element. It fortifies and strengthens to an otherworldly degree.

Influencing
Think of a magnet and a compass. Such is the effect of the Influencing Impetus.

Taxing
The Taxing Impetus is another black art designed to drain or weaken the strength of its target Element.

Area of Effect
Some spells affect a single target—either the caster or someone or something designated by the caster—some affect multiple targets or characters designated by the caster. Other spells affect a range of area, either predetermined or a variable area, such as the caster’s Presence. Still other areas of effect are governed by the forces unleashed by the caster, these are called the Natural Effect. Unless otherwise stated everything within the Area of the spell is affected equally.

Areas of Effect are fairly self-explanatory and listed with each spell.

Presence
Certain spells have an Area of Effect that describes the Presence of the caster. The scope of the Presence area is determined exactly the same as it is for Range.
Han casts Mage Light—he wants to summon Lantern light. That’s an Obstacle 3, 9-syllable spell. Han rolls his Sorcery (B5) and Will (B5), and gets six successes—more than enough for his Ob 3 spell. The light appears, glowing at the end of his staff. He then tests his Forte (B6) and gets two successes—one less than the obstacle of the spell. Han temporarily subtracts 1D from his Forte; he will recover it when he has had a chance to rest for a few hours.

If the sorcerer’s Forte is reduced to zero, he is rendered unconscious. If a sorcerer’s Forte is reduced below zero, he has overtaxed himself—his body is overloaded with the power of the spell. For each point his Forte drops below zero he takes physical damage equal to the obstacle of the spell in “pips” on the Grayscale. If multiple dice are lost, the “pips” are cumulative.

A witch casts an Obstacle 3 spell and loses two dice due to Tax. Her Forte drops from B5 Forte to B3 Forte. If she then casts a spell and loses 4 Forte dice, her Forte drops to -1 and she takes a B3 wound (pips equal to the Obstacle 3 spell). If it dropped two below zero, then the damage would be B6 on the PTGS.

**The Sickness**

Every mage suffers from The Sickness at one time or another. It is the feeling of weakness and frailty that overcomes them after being taxed by spell casting. This draining weakness is only temporary however. Forte dice lost to failed Tax tests are recovered over a course of hours determined by the wizard’s Health.

**Standard Recovery Time**

\[10 - \text{Health exponent} = \text{Number of hours per Forte die}\]

Thus a Wizard with a Health of B5 recovers 1 point of taxed Forte every five hours \((10 - B5 = 5)\).

**Recovering from The Sickness**

When a wizard fails a Tax test, immediately test his Health to see how long it will take to recover from The Sickness. Each success knocks off one hour of time from the standard recovery time.

**Roll separately for each die lost. Minimum recovery time is one hour per Forte die.**

Han wants to recover the Forte die he lost when he cast Mage Light. The young wizard’s Health is B6, thus his recovery time is 4 hours per die. He rolls his Health and gets 2 successes, which knocks two hours off his recovery time.
Failed Casting

A sorcerer who botches a casting (does not meet the obstacle) is subject to three possible outcomes: harmless dissipation, garbled transmission or unwanted summoning.

The casting sorcerer should roll the Die of Fate for the failed spell:

1. Unwanted Summoning
2. Garbled Transmission
3-6. Harmless Dissipation

Harmless Dissipation

Harmless dissipation indicates that the sorcerer has gotten lucky this time. Their spell has no further effects, harmful or otherwise.

Garbled Transmission, aka: “Wheel of Magic, turn, turn, turn. Tell me the lesson that I have learned!”

Garbled Transmission means that the spell has misfired and has an unexpected effect. Consult the Wheel of Magic!

To use the Wheel of Magic, roll two different colored dice. The first die indicates direction on the wheel: Odd is counterclockwise, even is clockwise. The second die indicates how many steps the wheel shifts in that direction. Thus if I roll a 2/3 result, I move clockwise three steps.

Starting in the middle, find the Element, Impetus, Range, Duration and Area of the attempted spell. These are the starting points when using the Wheel of Magic. Use the cast spell’s locations on the Wheel as the starting point.

If Han gets a Garbled Transmission result when attempting to cast Eldritch Shield (Arcane, Control, Personal Range, Sustained, for “a shield-sized” Area), he consults the Wheel of Magic. Two d6s are rolled. With a 2/3 result, the new spell would be: Fire, Creative, Presence Range, Instantaneous, with a Natural Effect Area.

But what does that all mean? The final interpretation is up to the GM but I think this one is fairly obvious — the botched attempt at summoning the Eldritch Shield instead causes an eruption of flame in the place of the shield. Since the Range is Presence, it can be made manifest several paces from the caster, so as the GM I would not have damaged him with it — but it might hurt one of his friends, and it certainly is a rather noticeable effect!

Allocate Successes

To fully benefit from most spells, the wizard must generate more successes than the obstacle of the spell. Extra successes are divided between Effect and Area as the caster sees fit.

Area of Effect

A spellcaster can allocate extra successes into the spell’s Area of Effect to increase the area covered by the spell.

The Sense has an Area of 10p plus 10p per extra success. This means that as long as the spell is successfully cast the sorcerer may “sense” for 10 paces around himself. For each additional success the sorcerer allocates to Area he may sense for an additional 10 paces. 1 extra successes? The Area of Effect is 20 paces. 5 extra successes? The Area of Effect is 60 paces.

Effect

The more successes a caster puts into Effect, the more potent the spell is.

Turn Aside the Blade’s effect is to add an obstacle penalty to attacks directed against the caster. Each success over the actual obstacle of the spell is +1 Ob to all incoming attacks. 4 successes over? +4 Ob.

Damaging Effect Example

Han casts Shards at the feet of a charging Hound Assassin. Shards is an Ob 1 spell with a Damaging Effect. Han rolls an amazing 9 successes — 8 successes over his obstacle. The Damaging Effect base Power is 1/3 of Han’s Will of B5, plus 1 pip for every 2 successes over obstacle. So that’s B1 (1/3 Will) plus 4 (8 successes divided by 2) = B5 Mark result; Incidental B3, Superb of B7. Han rolls the DOF and gets a 5! A B7—Superb shot — to the drugged murderer! Yay for the good guys!

If the player plans to sustain the spell, he should note how many successes were put into spell Effect and how many were put into Area.
Spell Interrupt

Spells must be completed uninterrupted. If a sorcerer is “distracted” while speaking the syllables of an incantation, the spell is ruined and a Tax test is required. The obstacle of the test is based on the portion of the spell that was completed. If it was half done, the test is at half the spell obstacle. Also, the sorcerer is subject to Failed Casting. See above.

Interruptions Include, but Are Not Limited to:
- Being hit in the mouth, being physically (or magically) restrained, being hurt, being blinded, a sudden violent squall, falling asleep, being persuaded to stop, failing a Steel test, having a sustained Eldritch Shield reduced to zero dice.

Sustained Spells

A sorcerer is rigorously trained in the art of concentration. He is able to slip into trance-like meditations almost instantly and then, while maintaining the trance, come forward in his mind and interact normally with his surroundings. By dividing his concentration into separate compartments, a sorcerer can sustain one or more spells at a time.

To maintain a spell the sorcerer casts the spell as normal and then, once successful, nominates one Will die to represent the spell. This die is placed at the top of the character sheet. So long as the sorcerer is sustaining that spell, the Will die may not be used for any Will tests (including sorcery or sustaining tests). A sorcerer may maintain as many spells as his Will minus one.

Only spells with lasting effects may be maintained in this way. Spells with instantaneous effect may not be. The spell list in the Burner indicates if a spell can be sustained or not.

It requires one action in the script to drop (stop sustaining) a spell.

While Sustaining a Spell, a Sorcerer May:
- Fight, jog, jump, play, talk, argue, read, study, think and cast spells.

Be creative, have fun, and don’t screw your players too hard.

Unwanted Summoning

Unwanted summoning indicates that the sorcerer has ripped open an unwarded gate with his senseless prattle. Spellcasting is a dangerous game, and this is about as bad as it gets.

There are two ways to play this. The first is the more brutal—the gate is opened and the caster disappears. Bye-bye. Sucked into the nether-realms by an accident of his negligence and bad luck.

The second way is the opposite: Something gets pulled through from the other side. A shade, a spirit, an imp, a demon. Something nasty, something that is going make the caster sad in the long run. I don’t advocate killing a spell-caster outright because they failed a spell. I do, however, advocate making them pay a heavy price.

Be creative, have fun, and don’t screw your players too hard.

If a Destroyer/Damaging Effect result is rolled on the Wheel, use the same mechanics described for Damaging Effects. When determining the Power of the failure, add to the base Power for each success below the spell obstacle!
While Sustaining a Spell, a Sorcerer May Not:

Sprint, panic (i.e., fail a Steel test, even by one die), be hurt, fall down hard, fail a Tax test (even by one die), completely lose an Eldritch Shield, go to sleep or otherwise lose consciousness.

Maintaining Concentration After a May Not

If any of the above “may nots” happen to the sorcerer while she is sustaining a spell (or spells), then she must test her Will against the base obstacle of each spell currently being sustained. If she fails the Will test, the spell being sustained is dropped. If the Will test is successful, the caster maintains her concentration and sustains the spell. Dropping a sustained spell due to distractions is not a Spell Interrupt or a Failed Casting. But it can be bad news if the spell you were sustaining was Levitation…

The Power Still Flows through Him.

When sustaining a spell a sorcerer must retest for Tax. The time between tests is equal to his Forte minus the spell obstacle in hours. If this results in zero or a negative number, the spell may not be maintained at all. The “Power Still Flows” Tax test is at the base spell obstacle—casting a spell patiently does not help sustain it later. This test counts as a standard Tax test for the “May Not” of sustaining spells.

If Han (Forte B6) is sustaining Turn Aside the Blade (Ob 4), then he must retest for Tax every two hours. (6-4=2). The obstacle for the test is 4 (the base spell obstacle). If he fails the test, then dice are subtracted from his Forte just as with a normal Tax test.

The Color of Will Dice

We here at Burning Wheel headquarters strongly recommend that wizard players keep a set of specially colored or styled dice to represent their Will. Only keep as many as the Will exponent. That way it is very easy to keep track of how many spells you have sustained. Each die represents a potential spell! It is much easier than taking notes or some such—if the special Will dice are not in your hand, then one can safely assume they are being used to sustain an important spell, and are thus unavailable for casting other, less important, spells.

Advanced Spell Casting

Each spell can be cast in five different ways: Normally, Carefully, Patiently, Patiently and Carefully, and Hastily.

Normally

This method uses the standard obstacle and syllables for each spell. No special consideration is taken. This is Basic Spell Casting as described above.

Carefully

The sorcerer meticulously speaks the words of the spell, enunciating slowly and deliberately. This decreases the Obstacle of the spell while increasing the time taken to cast the spell. For every -1 Ob, the sorcerer increases the syllables in multiples of two.

-1 Ob = x2 Syllables
-2 Ob = x4 Syllables
-3 Ob = x6 Syllables
etc….

The casting obstacle cannot be reduced below half its original obstacle (round down) or below one. Whichever is higher.

Patiently

By adding specially designed phrases and pauses to the body of the spell, and by taking the utmost care, the sorcerer reduces the strain of Tax on her body. Casting patiently reduces the Tax test obstacle.

Increase syllables by x5 for each Tax obstacle reduced.

-1 Ob = x5 syllables
-2 Ob = x10 syllables
-3 Ob = x15 syllables

-3 Ob is the most a sorcerer may reduce Tax.

Casting a spell patiently does not lower the obstacle for sustaining the spell. See The Power Still Flows Through Him, above.

Patiently and Carefully

A sorcerer may combine the two methods above to slowly release the spell to insure his success and to insure that it will pose little danger to himself.

-1 Ob Cast/-1 Ob Tax = x10 syllables
-2 Ob Cast/-2 Ob Tax = x40 syllables
-3 Ob Cast/-3 Ob Tax = x90 syllables
-4 Ob Cast/-3 Ob Tax = x120 syllables

The same limits apply as for Carefully and for Patiently.
Han wants to cast Mage Light for a Lantern effect (Ob 3, 9 syllables). He has plenty of time so he decides to minimize his risks and cast the spell Patiently and Carefully. The young wizard wants to reduce the Casting and Tax obstacles by -2 to 1—a x40 syllable multiplier. 1x40 = 360 syllables (180 Actions/45 Volleys (seconds)/15 Exchanges).

His obstacle to cast the spell at this level is 1, as is his Tax obstacle. Both are easily achieved for a wizard of his caliber.

Hastily

Hurrying a spell can reduce time but it increases the difficulty of the casting and the chance of making an error. Add +1 Obstacle to the casting for each two syllables extracted from the incantation.

A spell can never be reduced below half its original syllables.

+1 Ob Cast/+0 Ob Tax = -2 syllables
+2 Ob Cast/+1 Ob Tax = -4 syllables
+3 Ob Cast/+2 Ob Tax = -6 syllables
+4 Ob Cast/+3 Ob Tax = -8 syllables

Each level of Casting Hastily reduces the casting time by one action in the script. (2 syllables equals one action.)

If Han was in a bind and needed his Lantern Light fast he could cast the spell Hastily. The normal time for the spell is 9 syllables or 5 Actions. The young wizard wants that light up pronto, so he casts at Hastily/-4 syllables. That reduces the time to 3 actions/5 syllables and raises the casting to Ob 5 and the Tax obstacle to 4.

Coup de Magie

(Pronounced: Coo d’ Mahji) A sorcerer may withhold the final syllables of an incantation until he deems them fit to be released. This requires the utmost concentration—the sorcerer must focus all his Will to maintain the pregnant spell. He may hold the Coup de Magie for as many actions equal to his Will exponent. If he still wants to continue to hold the spell after this time, he must make an Ob 1 Will test. Each set of actions that he holds the Coup de Magie raises the obstacle of the concentration test by one.

With his B5 Will Han can hold Coup de Magie for 5 Actions. After that he has to make an Obstacle 1 concentration test. If he passes he may continue to hold the Coup de Magie for another five actions, after which he must make another Will test at Obstacle 2. This can continue until the wizard finally casts the spell or fails a Will test.

If the wizard fails the Will test for Coup de Magie, then the spell is lost, but no Tax or Failed Casting test is taken. But if he is “distracted” from Coup de Magie, he suffers full Tax as under Spell Interrupt. See Spell Interrupt for distractions.

The Clash of Magic

Nargil felt a tugging at the corner of his eye. He looked up from his reading and saw his light slowly dimming. Something was coming, something Dark.

Sorcery is as much science as it is art. Like the science of alchemy, Sorcery has catalysts, reagents, sharp acids and cold bases—an chemistry of reactants that can be set against one another to return the source to a neutral state.

Spells of certain Elements and Impetus can be cast to cancel or diffuse spells of opposing Elements and Impetus.

Counter-spells

Spells can be cast to attempt to neutralize or overcome an opposing spell. The contest is much like the martial Strike and Block—the sorcerer with the most successes overcomes, but spell’s effect is lessened by the defense (or attack) of his opponent.

Roll for the counter-spell as a normal casting. The spell’s successes are reduced by the successes of the counter-spell. If this reduces the spell successes below the obstacle, then it is completely negated (but not a Failed Casting). If the counter-spell generates more successes, then its effects overwhelm the opposing spell and are played out as normal—the extra successes over the defeated spell go toward spell Effect and Area.

More than Impetus and Element, what is ultimately being countered is the actual “effect” of the spell. Let common sense reign in these matters.

Element Opposites

Fire vs Water, White vs Earth, Air vs Fire, Heaven vs Heaven, Arcane vs Arcane, and Anima vs Anima: These are just some of the possibilities. The effects of these combinations are not cut and dried or easily predicted.

Impetus Opposites

Destroyer vs Creative, Enhancing vs Taxing, Controlling vs Influencing, Influencing vs Influencing, and Controlling vs Controlling.
Some spells have obvious counters, some do not, and some do not have counters at all. Rainstorm is a counter-spell for Rain of Fire, or even Breath of Fire. Mage Light is always at war with Dark of Night. Persuasion has no real “counter,” it can’t be blocked or cancelled. However, the effects of Persuasion can be “countered” with Persuasion:

**Bad Wizard to warrior:** “Drop your sword.”
**Good Witch to warrior:** “ignore him.”
The sword is dropped, but the swordsman should ignore Bad Wizard’s further commands.

In fact, most spells cannot be countered directly. They must be attacked obliquely, usually by distracting the wizard as he casts or sustains the spell. Levitation, for example, has no counter-spell, but a hunting bow and a leaf head arrow make a fine substitute for one!

**Timing is tricky**
As long as the counter-wizard is casting a viable counter-spell, and finishes it in the same volley as the opposing spell, he may attempt to counter.

Spells like Rain of Fire, Breath of Wind and White Fire all have sudden and violent instantaneous effects. It is best to think ahead and defend yourself with an Eldritch Shield before engaging an enemy who can summon heaven’s wrath and turn you to pile of ash.

**The Eldritch Shield Spell**
This spell grants the wizard the power to erect a magical barrier to block incoming “Damaging/Taxing Effects” magic. This shield deflects spells like White Fire, Breath of Fire, Rain of Fire, Shards, Choking Hand, Lights of Simplex, Emperor’s Hand, Fire Fan and Storm of Lightning. *Each die of the shield negates one die from the incoming spell attack. The shield is reduced by one for each die it deflects.*

**The Shield Was Blasted Away**
If the Eldritch Shield is knocked down completely (reduced to zero dice) by opposing spells, the witch must make an Ob 2 Tax test. Also, completely losing a Shield while sustaining other spells means the witch must test Will to maintain those spells. If the witch drops the Shield voluntarily there is no additional negative effect.

**Gameplay**

Some spells have obvious counters, some do not, and some do not have counters at all. Rainstorm is a counter-spell for Rain of Fire, or even Breath of Fire. Mage Light is always at war with Dark of Night. Persuasion has no real “counter,” it can’t be blocked or cancelled. However, the effects of Persuasion can be “countered” with Persuasion:

**Bad Wizard to warrior:** “Drop your sword.”
**Good Witch to warrior:** “ignore him.”
The sword is dropped, but the swordsman should ignore Bad Wizard’s further commands.

In fact, most spells cannot be countered directly. They must be attacked obliquely, usually by distracting the wizard as he casts or sustains the spell. Levitation, for example, has no counter-spell, but a hunting bow and a leaf head arrow make a fine substitute for one!

**Timing is tricky**
As long as the counter-wizard is casting a viable counter-spell, and finishes it in the same volley as the opposing spell, he may attempt to counter.

Spells like Rain of Fire, Breath of Wind and White Fire all have sudden and violent instantaneous effects. It is best to think ahead and defend yourself with an Eldritch Shield before engaging an enemy who can summon heaven’s wrath and turn you to pile of ash.

**The Eldritch Shield Spell**
This spell grants the wizard the power to erect a magical barrier to block incoming “Damaging/Taxing Effects” magic. This shield deflects spells like White Fire, Breath of Fire, Rain of Fire, Shards, Choking Hand, Lights of Simplex, Emperor’s Hand, Fire Fan and Storm of Lightning. *Each die of the shield negates one die from the incoming spell attack. The shield is reduced by one for each die it deflects.*

**The Shield Was Blasted Away**
If the Eldritch Shield is knocked down completely (reduced to zero dice) by opposing spells, the witch must make an Ob 2 Tax test. Also, completely losing a Shield while sustaining other spells means the witch must test Will to maintain those spells. If the witch drops the Shield voluntarily there is no additional negative effect.

Faith

The power of deity exists here—it is present and potent. Gods make themselves manifest through their vessels. These vessels possess unique qualities which mark them as gateways for the will divine. In Burning Wheel, the Faith system is at once the simplest and the most complex. Unlike the systematic and scientific aspects of Sorcery, Faith is free-form, unpredictable and boundless. Priests are not limited to a set of spells or abilities; they are only limited by their belief in the powers most high and the bounty of their master.

Faith is an attribute only available to characters who possesses the **Faithful** trait. Faith tests are, of course, open-ended. Unless specifically stated there is no Tax and no “failed casting” results for Faith.

**Divine Intervention**

The prime criterion for Faith tests and their resultant miracles is that there must be a need. This ability is miracle and power granted by a deity in order to aid her cause or followers on Earth. Admittedly, the motives of a divine power are often obscure and help may come in odd forms! However, Faith is not “wishing.” Begging for something unnecessary or gratuitous is a sure way to cut the rapturous tap. Who are we to presume to know the mind of the divine?

There are a number of general ways all deities intercede on behalf of their most favored. Use these general classes of Divine Might to judge obstacles for Faith tests.

**Divine Might**

**Blessing**– Ob 4. The priest may grant other devotees prowess and boons. He may bless a person, beast, device or tool (depending on the religious idiom) and grant +1D to one stat or skill for the duration of a task.

**Boon**– Ob 4. The will divine can render the pure of spirit remarkable and potent. Allow one test or series of tests to be open-ended. Choose which test shall benefit when the prayer is spoken. The prayer may be offered in advance and will “wait” to release itself until the proper moment arises.

**Aid**– Ob 5. When the physical body lacks, a priest calls upon his master to grant him the forbearance and ability to succeed in his name. Add extra successes from the Faith test as dice to any stat or Steel or Health test. Choose
what is aided at the time the prayer is spoken. The prayer can be cast in advance and will “wait” to release itself until the proper ability is tested.

**Hindrance**—Ob 4-6. (Obstacle varies depending on the number of foes. Ob 4 for one or two, Ob 5 for three or five, Ob 6 for six to ten.) When the enemies of the Faith rush forward in great mass to overwhelm the faithful, god may raise his hand against them and cause them to stumble, fall or cower.

**Guidance**—Ob 5. When the way is lost, the priest may ask to know the right path.

**Minor Miracle**—Ob 5. When it is dark we pray for light, when it is wet we pray for dry, when something is broken we pray that it be made whole, when something is lost we pray that it be found.

**Purification**—Ob 5. With the touch of his hand, the priest may drive out rot and evil spirits.

**Consecration**—Ob 6. A lengthy prayer to mark a place as holy and sacrosanct—protected from the ill will of spirits and demons. The consecration will bar spirits and demons whose Will is lower than the Faith attribute of the consecrating priest.

**Inspiration**—Ob 7. A priest may call upon her deity for a revelation or knowledge. This is a dangerous prayer, because a divinity knows much and often will reveal that which the priest did not intend to learn.

**Intercession**—Ob 8. This mighty miracle brings the hand of god down to pluck the devotee from danger (or pluck the danger from the devotee).

A priest is about to be run down by a galloping knight. There is no hope of escape—but miraculously the knight falls from his saddle as he charges! Alternately, a priest is about to be shot down by an assassin—but the murderer’s bow string snaps! Huzzah!

**Miracle**—Ob 10. When all hope is lost, when the cataclysm has come, we pray for the power divine to manifest and save us. This is the big one—the column of scourging fire, the parting of the seas, the raging storm that destroys the fleet.

**Prayer vs Sorcery**

In many instances Faith and the Gift of Sorcery are at odds. In my campaign I allow the Minor Miracle to be used as a “spell-breaker” type prayer. If successfully prayed, the Minor Miracle can strip a wizard of a sustained spell or interrupt/neutralize the casting of a spell in progress.

**Prayers and Time**

Prayers and supplications take as long as is required to utter the very syllables invoked. *The priest-player must invent and speak the prayer!* After the prayer has been spoken the exact result (and timing) is out of their hands—a higher power takes over.

For example, “Drive this darkness from mine eyes; grant me sight! Let me look upon thine enemies!” The priest’s staff lights with fire as bright as day. The prayer comes in at 19 syllables/10 actions.

Prayers are not spells. They do not cause tax and may not be “cast Patiently, Carefully or Hastily.”

**Ritual Prayer**

Faith may be used to help Faith. Use the same rules for *Helping Out* described under Fun Skill Stuff. Believers in the cult may also aid in the call to the deity, even if they are non-Faithful characters. For every 20 dice of Will from non-faithful characters that pray along with her, the Faithful may add 1D to her Faith test.

A Ritual can be called for any prayer or miracle. The prayer must be spoken once for every participant in the Ritual. All of the participants must pray for the duration of the Ritual; they may not do anything else but pray.
Expanded Gameplay

Ducunt fata volentem, nolentem trahunt
The fates guide him who will, him who won’t, they drag.
—Seneca
Obstacle Modifiers for Skills

Base Obstacle and Up

The base obstacle for any test is 1. Obstacles can never fall below 1. (There is always an exception: In the case of Striking an incapacitated character. Or in the case of acts done without effort, like picking your nose. See Combat Obstacles and I Can Do That without Trying for more on that.) All obstacle penalties/bonuses here are cumulative.

Why Raise Obstacles?

Obviously some situations are more complex than others, it follows that skill tests would grow more difficult. For example, it is much easier to make simple shelves with the Carpentry skill than it is to make an armoire.

However, there is another reason. Without higher obstacles, the character’s skills, stats and attributes will never improve.

Tests Without Proper Tools

There is a double obstacle penalty for attempting to complete a task without the proper tools. For example, you can’t create boards without a saw. It can be an improvised stone-toothed affair or a nice steel blade, but there has to be something.

Tools can be bought as a kit during character creation. It is assumed the tool kit provides for the needs of the skill and mitigates the double obstacle penalty. In the list that follows the penalty is noted as “x2 Ob.”

Skill Obstacle Modifiers

Obstacle Modifiers for Skills

141

140

Academic Skills

This category includes Research, Symbology, Reading and similar skills.

Poor Lighting +1 Ob

Decayed Texts +1-4 Ob

More often than not characters will come upon a text that is in poor condition. Either due to age, wear and tear, fire or water damage, the text is somewhat less legible than it was originally. The obstacle penalty is based on the extent of the damage.

Anatomy

Mutilated Viscera +2 Ob

Mutilated viscera are harder to identify than intact pieces.
Inconspicuous
Inconspicuous works best when the character looks just like everyone else.

Different Race +2 Ob
Same Race, Different Region +1 Ob
Garish or Inappropriate Clothing +1 Ob
Obvious Identifying Mark or Feature +2 Ob
There are so many things that can go wrong when being inconspicuous. But when it goes right no one notices just how slick you are.

Knots
Wet Ropes +1 Ob
Frayed Ropes +1 Ob
Icy Ropes +2 Ob

Martial Skills
Boxing, Brawling, martial arts and weapon skills have their own section of obstacle modifiers. See the following section, Combat Obstacle Modifiers.

Medicinal Skills
This category includes the Herbalism, Surgery and Field Dressing skills.

Tests without Tools x2 Ob
Wounds can be tended with rags and a bottle of whisky, but the process is immeasurably easier with a sharp knife, clean cloth, needles, thread, boiling water and a leather strap for the victim to bite down on.

Horrible Conditions +2 Ob
Cleaning someone’s wounds in the rain, in the mud, in the snow, on a sinking ship, in the middle of a fire, or during a raging battle.

Musical and Performance Skills
Distracting Conditions +1 Ob
Performance requires concentration. Playing in a town square full of bustling business and screaming vendors is not as easy as it sounds.

Inferior Instruments +1 Ob
It’s hard to make your fugue sound masterful when your organ’s pipes are bad.

Navigation
Stormy weather +2 Ob
Cloudy weather +1 Ob
Tests without Tools x2 Ob
Uncharted Waters +1 Ob
Out of Sight of Shore +1 Ob
Navigating is a tricky business. It is always a fine balance of knowledge, experience and luck. It is all too easy for the balance to be thrown off and the ship to be lost.
Social Skills

These modifiers cover the Haggling, Oratory, Persuasion and Seduction skills.

- **Openly Hostile** +2 Ob
- **Openly Friendly** -2 Ob
- **Suspicious** +1 Ob
- **Trusting or Gullible** -1 Ob
- **Stubborn or Ornery** +1 Ob
- **Language Barrier** x2 Ob
- **Semi-fluent Language** +2 Ob

Social skills obstacles are based on the target’s Will. The “Stubborn/Ornery” modifier should be used for most traits that would make it harder for the target to be convinced. Alternately, the Trusting/Gullible modifier should be used for Traits that would make it easier for the target to be convinced.

Stealthy

- **Twilight/Dawn light** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Torchlight (Dim Flickering Light)** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Dark** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Windy** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Noisy** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Rainy** See Observation Obstacle Penalties
- **Foggy** See Observation Obstacle Penalties

The above conditions have no effect on the Stealthy skill per se, rather they are penalties for Observers attempting to spot Stealthy Characters.

Ranger Max wishes to quietly cross a courtyard (Open Ground). His Obstacle is 2—base Ob 1, +1 for the Open Ground.

Orienteering

- **Unfamiliar Territory** +2 Ob
- **Bad Weather** +1 Ob
- **Night or Darkness** +2 Ob

The Unfamiliar Territory modifier is not for going someplace that a character has never been before, but for being in a type of land he is unaccustomed to. For example a character who grew up in the desert suddenly finds himself wandering a large, dark forest; he knows the principles of finding his way around, but is disoriented by the big slabs of wood blocking the horizon line.

Perception

- **Spotting “Stealthy” Characters** x2 Ob
- **Spotting “Inconspicuous” Characters** x2 Ob

Characters without Observation Training suffer a double obstacle penalty when trying to spot other characters who are using Stealthy or Inconspicuous. Use the Observation penalties for additional modifiers.

Riding

See Riding the Beast in Expanded Gameplay.

Rigging

- **Stormy Weather** +2 Ob
- **Icy Weather** +3 Ob
- **Tangled, Frayed Rigging** +1 Ob
- **Clean/Supple Rigging** -1 Ob

The “Clean/Supple Rigging” bonus is for sailing ships that are maintained particularly well with top-quality materials.

Swimming

- **Swimming after Eating** +1 Ob
- **Rough Seas/Swift River** +2 Ob
- **Stormy Seas** +3 Ob

Don’t swim during the dawn or twilight hours. Never swim alone. Swimming the Channel is tough but doable, and it is as much Forte as anything else.
Combat Obstacle Modifiers

Ranged Weapons Combat Modifiers

Called Shots in Shooting

It is possible to designate a specific area of the body as the main target of a shot. In general, when firing at a human target, it is assumed that all shots are directed at the chest or head, all other hits are essentially near misses. When you want to specify a location on the body use these obstacle modifiers:

- **Heads** +3 Ob
- **Hands, Feet and Knees** +4 Ob
- **Arms or Legs** +4 Ob

If a character misses due to the called shot penalty, then the shot completely misses. If the attacker hits with a called shot, the damage affects the immediate area. Armor dice, if any, are only rolled for the specific location “called.”

Cover from Shooting

- **Minimal cover** +1 Ob
- **Partial cover** +2 Ob
- **Full Cover** +3 Ob

**Firing from Full Cover** +4 Ob

In most circumstances firing from a full cover position is awkward and incurs a +1 Ob penalty to hit.

**Firing through Cover** +3 Ob

Firing at the covered parts of a partially exposed target is a +3 Ob penalty to hit the target. See the Materials Mechanics section for more information about shooting through.

Chameleon

When shooting a target that is “Chameleon” concealed add the number of Chameleon successes to the shooter’s obstacle. Use this penalty for attackers who have detected a target even if they cannot completely see it. To see cloaked targets, characters must make a successful Perception test.

Blindfire

When firing at targets whose location is unknown…you miss. If the GM determines that there is a remote possibility that you might hit, then cast a Die of Fate. If the DOF comes up a 1, then you have waved your bow in the right direction and managed to hit the target as normal. There is a -1 penalty to the DOF damage roll.

Firing at target without looking—one that you know is there—incurs a +6 Ob penalty. (Sticking your crossbow out from cover and firing at oncoming haddies.)

Firing Stance

**Standing**

Standard attack position. No modifier.

**Crouched, Kneeling** see description

Shooting at a target who is crouching or kneeling is a +1 penalty to the attacker if the target is beyond five paces. Moving in a crouch: Walk at .75 x Speed. Jog at 1.5 x Speed. No sprint possible while crouching.

**Prone** see description

Falling prone requires one action. Lying prone offers +1 Ob of cover at 10 paces and +2 cover beyond 20 paces, even if the character is in the open. Characters can crawl on elbows and knees at half walk Speed. The Prone modifier is not combined with other cover. It is assumed that a character normally does what ever necessary to best use cover, this includes laying prone (even if the player doesn’t explicitly state it.)

Movement Penalties

Movement penalties apply to the character who is moving. If both characters are moving, then the penalty is applied twice.

**Walking** +1 Ob

There is a +1 Ob penalty for shooting while walking. Attacker may stop and fire and then proceed after shooting in order to reduce penalties. This process is dictated through the script.

**Jogging** see description

It is +3 Ob to shoot while you are jogging. The penalty to hit a jogger is equal to 1/2 their Speed stat rounded up. Thus it is +2 Ob to hit a jogger with B4 speed, and it is a +4 Ob to hit a jogger with B7 speed.

**Sprinting** see description

Sprinting demands the character’s full attention. The obstacle penalty for firing on the sprinting character is equal to the character’s Speed exponent. Thus it is +3 Ob to shoot at a target sprinting with B3 speed, but it is +6 Ob to shoot at a sprinter with B6 speed.

Shooting while sprinting incurs a +4 Obstacle modifier.

“He’s coming right for us!” Notes on Movement Modifiers

The obstacle modifiers for firing on a jogger or sprinter only count if the target is moving across the line of fire. If the target is moving directly toward or away from the attacker the modifier is only +1 Ob.
Range Modifiers

**Pointblank** -2 Ob
Missile weapons are listed with Pointblank range. When firing at a target at that range the shooter gets a -2 Ob bonus.

If the target is under that pointblank range, then they are too close to hit easily. The shooter incurs a +4 Ob penalty.

**Short, Medium and Long range** c, +2, +4 Ob
Each weapon has designated ranges. The farther away a target is the harder it is to hit.

Targeting Modifiers

**Aim** -1 Ob per action aimed
After acquiring a target an attacker may choose to Aim in order reduce the Ob. For each action the character spends Aiming they receive a -1 Ob bonus. A character may only aim as many actions as half his Perception exponent. A character cannot aim at a place where a target will be and receive any bonus.

**Snapshot** +3 Ob
If a character fires at an unacquired target, he has a +3 Ob penalty for the shooting skill test. If the character persists firing at the unacquired target, the penalty drops by one for each shot after the first. If the attacker acquires the target, then the penalty is removed entirely.

**Superior Position** see description
Shooters firing from elevated positions receive a special range modifier to their obstacle. -1 Ob to the range mods for 5-10 paces of elevation above target, -2 Ob for 11+ paces above target. This only applies to Ob penalties for range.

**Wee Folk** +1-6 Ob
Attacking a small target like a faerie is difficult. The smaller the little munchkin the higher the penalty. The smallest pixies incur a +6 penalty while the bigger leprechauns can be targeted at a +1 penalty.

Visibility Conditions

**Visibility dim** +1 Ob
Twilight, street lamp light, poorly lit interiors and rain incur a +1 Ob modifier for all shooting tests.

**Visibility hazy** +2 Ob
Smoke, mist, fog, heavy rain or moonlit darkness causes a +2 Ob penalty to shooting.

**Visibility obscured** +4 Ob
Darkness, thick fog, torrential rain, smoke: +4 Ob penalty to shooting.

Getting Knocked Down

It requires two actions to get back on your feet. During the second of those two actions you may “scramble move” equal to your walk rating.

**Attacking from the ground** +4 Ob
Unless otherwise noted you may not keep a stance while on the ground. This penalty is for a character Striking at a standing foe. If both characters are down, the situation is slightly different: The character on his back is +2 Ob, the character on top is +1 Ob. Of course, if a character is on his stomach (or face) then the +4 Ob still applies.

Striking Distance

**Lunging** +1 Ob
Striking at just “outside” your striking distance is +1 Ob.

**Attacking from Inside (Striking Distance)**
- Pole Weapons, Two-Handed Axes +4 Ob
- Swords, Axes, Clubs +3 Ob
- Small Swords +2 Ob
- Hilt/Butt Smash +1 Ob
- Knives, Daggers No Penalty
- Fists No Penalty

Movement Modifiers

**Walk/Skip**
Taking a quick sidestep in the press can sometimes save your life. A character can move his walk speed in a volley without penalty to him or his attacker.

**Jog/Dash** special
Moving in the melee is essential to staying alive. Characters vie for position while staying out of their opponent’s range. The penalty to hit a dasher in
melee is equal to 1/4 his Speed. A character who is dashing incurs a +1 Ob penalty to his own tests in the volleys he is dash-moving.

*Sprint* special
Sprinting demands the character’s full attention. The penalty to hit a sprinter in melee is equal to 1/2 their speed. A character who is sprinting is a +4 Ob penalty for all melee maneuvers except Charge/Tackle. Charging is not penalized for sprinting.

Called Shots

Called Shots in Bare-fisted Combat
There are no penalties for making “called shots” in barefisted combat. If your opponent is wearing a metal breastplate and you don’t try to punch him in the face, then you are an idiot.

As long as the areas being attacked are reasonably exposed there are no called shot modifiers. However, if your opponent is covered to a near complete degree and you are trying to punch him in the hand or eye there is +3 Ob called shot penalty. Or if your opponent is wearing a helmet and you are trying to punch him in the face there is a +1 Ob penalty. Yes, this rule is specifically designed to screw players.

Called Shots in Armed Melee Combat
- Head: +2 Ob
- Arms, Legs: +1 Ob
- Eyeballs, Earballs: +3 Ob

It is harder to wick someone’s head off with a sword than it is to punch them in the jaw. For that reason melee weapons and the like have a small called shot modifier.

Telegraphing
Since the armored goon can usually tell that the bare-knuckled bruiser is going to try to punch him in the eye rather than in his spiky codpiece, the defender gets a -1 Ob bonus to Block, Counter, and Avoid called shots.

0 Obstacle
There is no obstacle for Striking a target or opponent that is unable to defend himself. Unconscious, restrained or otherwise unaware is considered “unable to defend themselves.” What this means is: No successes still misses, one success is an Incidental hit, successes equal to the weapon’s Add is a Mark result, successes equal to twice the weapon’s add is a Superb result. Surprised opponents are not considered to be 0 Obstacle.

Tests in Combat: Time, Time, Time
Any skill can be used in a combat situation. But remember that skills take time to “use” and combat happens in a matter of heartbeats. The exchange is not the venue for Carpentry.

Modifying the Difficulty
It is hard to get a good shot with your hunting bow while you are running in the rain, in the forest, at twilight. The modifiers to base obstacle pile up rapidly. Be prepared to have some high ones. GMs should pile on the modifiers. Obstacle modifiers are the spice of Burning Wheel. Without modifiers tests are too easy; easy tests don’t raise skills. Characters need to be confronted with the occasional impossible task so that they can get better.

Getting Hit: Armor!
If at all possible, wear armor. It’s cumbersome, expensive, falls apart, and doesn’t always work. But it will save your life when you least expect it.

Getting Hit Part 2: After Armor
If you do get shot or stabbed and you are alive enough to tell, stay down and stay out! Don’t be a hero. Assess your wound. Stop the bleeding if you can (or call for a doctor!). Getting hit again in your condition would be bad. Remember, if you are hit badly enough not only are you bleeding, but your Reflexes has dropped, making you slower (not to mention stupider). (See Anatomy of Injury)

Physician’s Assess
It is (at least) a Search Assess to check a wounded person’s condition. In order to determine if a wound is deadly or not, a doctor must spend three simple actions examining. Doctors may assess themselves with a Look assess action.
In Burning Wheel there are three combat distances, at which characters can attack one another in a melee; striking distance, Outside striking distance and Inside striking distance.

**Striking Distance**

Combatants are in striking distance when they cross swords and attempt to cut each other down with Strike and Counterstrike. There is no inherent modifier for attacking someone in striking distance.

A character’s striking distance extends from his hand to the tip of his weapon, usually about one or two paces. Pole weapons have a longer reach than swords, axes and clubs; they increase striking distance by one pace. Also, certain traits can increase a character’s striking distance, such as Long of Limb and Massive Stature.

**Outside (Striking Distance)**

When a character must extend his body to reach a target, that target is considered to be Outside striking distance. This is usually more than two paces from the character.

Pole weapons increase a character’s Outside range by a pace.

Attacking at the Outside range is modified by the +1 Ob Lunge penalty.

**Inside (Striking Distance)**

The “Get Inside” action takes a character into this range. This is when two opponents are in contact in some manner, by hands, arms, legs or even body to body—too close to use swords, axes, spears, etc in their traditional manner. Short stabbing or smashing weapons are more effective Inside, as opposed to pole weapons which are more effective attacking at long distance and useless Inside.

Being Inside striking distance, while limiting some actions, opens up a wide variety of other options (See Martial Actions in Melee Mechanics).

**Armor vs Called Shots**

Getting hit by a “called shot” in a specific location bypasses the general Protection dice. The defender is only allowed to roll for the armor in the specific location being struck:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Called Shot</th>
<th>Armor Dice Rolled by Defender</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head Shot</td>
<td>1D for Helmet, +1D for Mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face/Neck Shot</td>
<td>1D for Mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arm Shot</td>
<td>1D for Arm, +1D for Gloves/Gauntlets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand Shot</td>
<td>1D for Glove/Gauntlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Shot</td>
<td>1D for Leggings, +1D for Armored Boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot Shot</td>
<td>1D for Armored Boot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Combat Space**

When scripting an exchange, it is important to determine the general distance between the combatants. Are the opponents nose to nose? Are they circling just out of reach? Or are they across the street from each other. This simple detail will dictate the initial actions of each combatant: Do I charge him now? Do I draw my sword and advance? Do I Get Inside? Do I run? All very important questions.

**Not Getting Hit: A New Era**

If swords must be brought into play, then don’t get hit. Getting stabbed sucks. You’ll be out for months. Duck and Weave! Moving during the exchange raises your opponent’s obstacles.

**Momentum vs Inertia**

Horses, coaches, and other beasties move great distances in short amounts of time. A knightly charge into combat can be devastating. They can be on top of you before you can say, “Lance.”

**Take Cover!**

Act like a normal person when the arrows start to fly. Don’t stand in the middle of the field screaming at the archers. Get yourself some cover. Cover works. Cover will protect you. Cover is what normal people look for when arrows threaten to eat their heart. You will die standing out there.

**Expanded Gameplay**

In Burning Wheel there are three combat distances, at which characters can attack one another in a melee; striking distance, Outside striking distance and Inside striking distance.

**Combat: tying together Scripts, Melee, Weapons and Armor**

- Pole Weapons, Two Handed Axes: +4 Ob
- Swords, Axes, Clubs: +3 Ob
- Small Swords: +2 Ob
- Hilt/Butt Strike: +1 Ob
- Knives, Daggers: No Penalty
- Fists: No Penalty
Illustration of why I would rather have a spear than a sword

The contest above illustrates the danger of meeting a trained spearman when unprepared. Essentially, the swordsman can only attack if the spearman lets him. This situation is very difficult for an aggressor swordsman. Using his actions wisely, the spearman can retreat, keeping his opponent at the spear’s Outside striking distance, slashing at him with the bladed tip.

The swordsman depicted here has a Striking distance of 1-2 paces. His Outside striking distance is 3 paces from him. Opponents inside one pace of his reach are considered Inside Striking Distance.

Illustration of Spear/Pole Weapon Fighting Distances

The spearman depicted here has a striking distance of 1.5 to 3 paces. A long reach. His Outside striking distance is 4 paces from him. Opponents inside one and a half paces of his reach are considered Inside striking distance (and are trouble!).

The swordsman hopes to advance into his own striking distance by use of his Speed and hack down the spearman, but it is unlikely he will get a clean shot.

The swordsman dashes (+1 Ob penalty) forward (2 paces) and Blocks then Strikes. The spearman dashes (+1 Ob) back (2 paces) and Strikes and Strikes (with a +1 Ob Lunge penalty). Looking at both movement actions for the characters, it is easy to see that the spearman keeps the swordsman out of striking distance while giving him two good whacks. Even though the spearman’s Obstacle is 4 (Base 1 plus both characters are dash moving (+1,+1) and he is attacking at Outside striking distance (+1)) it is likely that he will inflict Incidental hits on the swordsman.
Post Trauma

Tending a wound helps a character recover from the trauma. It can also save a character from bleeding to death. There are three main skills used to tend a wound in Burning Wheel: Field Dressing, Herbalism and Surgery.

When tending a wound each skill can be used in one of two ways. Most often, “medical” skills are used to carefully sew up the damage and set the character to healing. This method takes longer, but it allows the wounded character to make a Health test to begin recovery. This is called Treatment.

Alternately, “medical” skills can be used to quickly patch up a character and prevent him from bleeding to death. This is called Attention. For most wounds, Attention does not start the recovery process. If a wound has been Attended to, it still must receive Treatment before recovery can begin.

If a character is wounded badly and not tended to, it is likely that he will bleed to death or will never fully recover.

Doctor?

For the purposes of simplicity anyone applying a medicinal skill is referred to as a doctor. I am not passing any value judgments; it is just easier that way.

Treatment

Superficial and Light wounds never require Treatment to begin recovery. Attention is always suitable for these wounds. However, for Midi through Mortal wounds, successful Treatment is required in order to heal properly. (If a wound hasn’t been Attended to, Treatment does stop bleeding as well as begin Recovery.)

Once a wound has been successfully Treated, the wounded character begins to heal immediately. Go to the Recovery section to determine the obstacle for the Health test to begin healing.
Attention

Superficial Wounds
Since Superficial wounds are really nothing more than scrapes and bruises, successful Attention to a Superficial wound removes the +1 DN modifier.

Light Wounds
The cuts, tears, and hard knocks of Light wounds can also be taken care of with simple Attention. Successful Attention to a Light wound reduces the +2 DN modifier to +1 DN as soon as the doctor finishes administering aid. However, the remaining +1 DN must be healed following the normal Recovery rules. (See below.)

Midi through Mortal
Successfully tending to a Midi through Mortal wound using Attention stops the wound from bleeding to the next level on the blood clock. It does not heal the wound nor does it allow the recovery process to begin.

Band-aids for Booboos:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Wound</th>
<th>Obstacles for Treatment and Attention</th>
<th>Skill Tested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unskilled</td>
<td>Field Dressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treat</td>
<td>Attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midi</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortal</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Field Dressing is a rough soldier’s skill that focuses more on stopping the bleeding and splinting shattered limbs than it does on long-term goals like recovery and Health tests. Hence, Field Dressing cannot even Treat Severe, Traumatic, or Mortal wounds.

Herbalism is a broad and useful skill that encompasses not only herbal remedies and concoctions, but a good deal of common sense “first aid.” Herbalism is also suited to Treating the harsher wounds and preparing a character to recover.

Tending the Bleeding as the Blood Clock Runs Down

Wounds are tended on a one-to-one basis. If a character has twelve Superficial wounds, she must be “treated” twelve times. If a character is being treated for a bleeding wound, the Blood Clock stops as soon as a successful test is made.

This does not mean that all wounds the character has suffered stop bleeding. Only the wound being tended stops bleeding. Thus, if a character has taken a Severe and a Traumatic wound and the doctor treats the Traumatic first, the Severe wound could progress to Traumatic and onward before the doctor can properly treat the victim. As you can see, it gets messy.

Surgery is a professional and academic medical skill. Surgeons only bother with Attention for the most minor wounds, all others are Treated with care and precision.

Folks with no skill can attempt to use some common sense and good luck to patch up their friends. Rather than apply a double obstacle penalty to characters with no skill, use the Unskilled column of the preceding chart to determine obstacles.
However, Palgi’s ministrations have reduced Vega’s wounded die penalties from -2 dice to -1D for the Midi and +1 DN for the “attended” to Light wound. Much better than -2 dice!

If Palgi had more time he could have put his extra successes toward helping Vega heal faster. When he tended to Vega’s Light wound he could have put his two extra successes into Working Diligently. This would have reduced Vega’s Health test obstacle for recovery by one.

Helping the Doctor

Medical skills use the same rules for helping as standard skills (see Fun Skill Stuff, Helping Out). However, there is a limit to how many people can actually help. A doctor can tend to one wound at a time. Up to three doctors may work on a single victim at a time. (That’s three surgeons bandaging up three separate wounds.) Each doctor can have two additional helpers.

Untended Wounds

If the character is unable to find someone with the proper skills to help them (or if the wound receives Attention but is never properly Treated), then the wound will close, but does so improperly. If Midi, Severe or Traumatic wounds are not properly treated, then their modifier becomes permanent. This happens over time. Use the normal Recovery times listed for the wound, but if the first interval of healing time passes without Treatment, the wound has closed and has begun to heal improperly.

Tending Mortal Wounds

Attending to a Mortal Wound

If by some miracle someone makes a successful Attention test on a Mortal wound, this will hold the wounded at death’s door for a number of hours equal to their Health exponent. If after this time has expired the character has not received proper Treatment or some form of miraculous aid, then the doctor must make another Attention test against the Mortal wound. If the doctor fails the test, the patient has moments to live as her life slowly ebbs away. If he succeeds, the wounded character is held at death’s door once again.

This represents that band-aids and whiskey can hold death at bay for a little while, but such makeshift treatment won’t bring the patient back.
Actual Treatment from a skilled surgeon or a miracle are the most reliable ways of pulling someone back from death’s door.

**Treating a Mortal Wound**

Mortal wounds are tricky things—a killing blow, ultimately destructive, difficult to judge and hard to mitigate. Their effect on the body and spirit is almost impossible to total. Despite this, it is possible to save someone from the verge of death and restore her to the land of the living.

*Treatment* obstacles for mortal wounds are listed with the Herbalism skill and the Surgery skill. These are the only two skills that can Treat a Mortal wound.

After the wounded has paid for her *Will to Live* (see Anatomy of Injury and Artha), the doctor may administer aid. If the test is successful, the patient is no longer in danger of dying, she will recover in time. If the test fails, the wounded passes on and becomes meat and fertilizer. *Dig in.***

No time is listed for Mortal Wound treatment. It is up to the GM, circumstance and drama. Some Mortal Wounds will require days of tireless care to overcome. Others can be beaten by quickly administering the right herbs at the right time. Again, it is up to the GM and the drama of the situation.

**Recovery: Regaining Consciousness and Recovering Dice**

The body’s ability to recover from trauma is based on the character’s Health attribute. Each type of trauma has an obstacle attached to it, the obstacle for the Recovery/Health test.

Wounds close and the body recovers its strength over time. Each wound is listed with a general recovery period. The actual time may vary according to the actual damage done to the character’s body and the whim of the GM.

**Health Tests for Recovery**

In order to see how quickly a wound closes up and the pain fades, the GM first determines the length of time needed to heal, aka the recovery time. The player then tests his Health vs the obstacle listed for the wound type—modified by any extra successes applied by a doctor Working Diligently on the wound. Extra successes from the Health test reduce recovery time.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wound</th>
<th>Health Ob</th>
<th>Recovery Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-6 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2-12 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1-3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2-6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortal</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>see below</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If the test meets the obstacle, then the wound requires maximum healing time.
- If the test exceeds the obstacle, then each extra success decreases the overall recovery time by 10%.
- If the health test fails, the wound will heal wrong. See Botched Recovery tests.

The final necessary time required to heal is then divided into the stages described below. (See Regaining Consciousness.)

---

*Note:* You may have noticed that there is no mention of the doctor making the pain go away. *Yay.* The modifiers stay until the body naturally heals. Pain relief can be had by using the Apothecary or Herbalism skill. See the Skill List in the Character Burner.
The Pain Period: How Long it Takes for the Fever to Break

As the wound heals, the modifiers it imposes on stats and skills drop. Usually, the modifiers, and the aches and pains, subside long before the wound has “fully healed.”

Listed with each type of wound is a range of possible times for recovery. The actual time depends on the specifics of the wound. Minor bone fractures may not cause too much pain, perhaps a Light wound, but they may take two weeks to heal. Whereas burns hurt a lot initially, but the pain usually fades quickly—perhaps a Light wound that heals in one week. It varies from situation to situation and it is up to the GM to decide the actual length of time required for the Recovery of a wound.

Characters cannot properly recover from Midi through Mortal wounds without Treatment.

Superficial Wound: +1 DN; 2-6 days to Recover; Health Ob 1

Attention to Superficial wounds suppresses the +1 DN modifier. The wound is still present until it has properly healed, but care, time and bandages provide the character with a buffer from the discomfort.

If a character receives no care for their superficial injuries, they may still test their Health to recover. In this case, the wound heals (and the modifier fades) in two to six days (determined by the GM) minus extra successes from the Health test, rather than immediately upon receiving Attention.

If a character has sustained more Superficial wounds than her Forte exponent, these modifiers can not be suppressed; her body has reached its limit. These “additional” cuts and scrapes close up over the normal healing time.

Light Wound: +2 DN; 5-10 days to Recover; Health Ob 2

The modifier can be partially suppressed by Treatment or Attention. +1 DN is suppressed as soon as the wound is Attended to. The second +1 DN fades in one quarter of the necessary time required to recover.

Untreated Light wounds will heal on their own. The first +1 DN drops in one quarter of the necessary healing time. The second +1 DN fades after half the time required to recover.

Midi Wound: -1D; 2-12 weeks to Recover; Health Ob 3

The -1D fades after one half of the necessary healing time.

Severe Wound: -2D; 1-3 months to Recover; Health Ob 4

The first die is recovered after one quarter of the necessary healing time. Second die is recovered after one half of the necessary time.

Von Goten is badly injured, he received a Severe wound in a battle against the Samagosians. Von Goten’s player rolls his Health for Recovery against Ob 4. He just makes it with four successes. The GM sets the time for recovery from the spear puncture at two months. This means that the wounded squire is at -2D for the next two weeks (one quarter of two months). After that his body recovers a little of its strength, he is at -1D for the following two weeks (the second quarter of two months). So, a month after he was wounded he has his dice back, but he still has another month to completely heal. If he is wounded again in that month his Severe wound reopens. Perhaps he’ll stay at home and practice his poetry.

Traumatic Wound -4D; 2-6 months to Recover; Health Ob 5

Traumatic wounds usually require massive restorative processes: A needle, thread, whiskey, a saw and some tar. After Treatment, a die is recovered for each quarter of the required time. The first die is recovered after 1/4 of the required time, the second recovers after 1/2, the third die after 3/4, and the fourth, and last, die modifier fades after the total necessary recovery time.

Mortal Wound: Incapacitation, Special Recovery; Health Ob 6

A Mortal Wound heals differently than the other wounds. Essentially the character must heal from each type of wound in succession from Mortal down to Superficial.

The necessary healing time for a Mortal Wound is divided into six unequal parts: Mortal, Traumatic, Severe, Midi, Light and Superficial stages. The Mortal stage is the longest. For the duration of this period the character is incapacitated and unconscious. This stage usually lasts 4-24 months. Test Health vs Obstacle 6. Subtract the 10% of the time for each extra success, if any. After the character has passed through the Mortal stage he makes another Health test for the Traumatic stage, and heals following the rules for Traumatic wounds. After he has recovered from the Traumatic wound then roll for recovery of the Severe wound. Roll for each wound, all the way down to Superficial, until the character has completely healed and recovered all his dice. On average the entire process takes about 18-20 months. Not bad for a near-death experience!
Riding the Beast

Animals in Burning Wheel have their own stats that are used when the beastie has to get something done. For riding beasts, the most important stat is Speed. Beastie Speed works the same as it does for characters. Beasties can walk, trot or sprint. During the script, beasties have Reflexes just like everybody else. They can only move in the volleys in which they have actions. And they can only be commanded to move via the actions of the rider.

Riding Beast Stats

Riding Horse
Re: B3 He: B4 Ste: B3 Mo: B12

War Horse
Pe: B3 Wi: B3 Ag: B3 Sp: B7 Po: B6 Fo: B8
Re: B4 He: B5 Ste: B6 Mo: B13

Speed Multipliers for Horse Movement
Walk- Speed x1  Trot- Speed x3  Sprint- Speed x5

Getting There

In certain situations it is necessary to know how quickly a rider can get from point A to point B. In such cases, the GM should make a rough time estimate based on the distance to be traveled and the Speed of the beastie. Then the GM should assign the trip an obstacle based on the traffic and road conditions. The rider knocks off -10% overall time for each success above the obstacle. The driver loses +20% time for each success he missed the obstacle by.

A horse can easily cover 20 miles of open ground or road in a day’s travel. 30 miles can be covered if the mount is urged on, and 40 or 50 miles can be covered if the mount is pushed hard and conditions are favorable.
Shooting at Moving Beasties

- +1 Ob for a walking beastie
- Shooting at a trotting beastie is obstacle equal to half its Speed exponent rounded down.
- Shooting at a sprinting beastie is obstacle equal to its Speed exponent.
- These trotting and sprinting obstacles only count for targets sprinting across line of sight. Shooting a beastie sprinting or trotting straight at the shooter is +2 Obstacle. See Combat for more on movement.

Mounted Combat

A character fighting from a mount who possesses the training skill Mounted Combat receives bonuses that untrained characters do not. When opening a Mounted Combat training skill choose one of the below options for the character, Mounted Lancer or Mounted Bowman. In general, Mounted Bowman is such a rare skill, it is assumed that nearly all Mounted Combat is as Mounted Lancer.

Mounted Lancer

- Ignore the +1 Ob penalty for fighting from horseback. But still penalized for Avoiding (+2 Ob).
- Ignore the obstacle penalty for the mount walking or trotting.
- Trained riders only have a +1 Ob penalty when their mount is sprinting.
- Mounted Combat gives a bonus +2D when using a sword from horseback. The sword was made for use from the back of a horse. These dice count as equipment dice for the purposes of failure. If the swordsman rolls double 1s on the horsey dice, the sword is dropped.
- The mounted combatant also knows the mechanics of the lanced charge. When bearing down with a lance or spear on a foe on foot, the mounted combatant gains +2 Power to the spear attack and a +1 bonus to the VA rating of the spear. Essentially the weapon becomes a “lance” (Power +4, VA 2). In order to effect this maneuver, the rider must be seated in saddle, harness and stirrups.
- When charging another mounted fighter while using a lance, successes to hit count as a Push attack in addition to the Strike damage. In this case, the Push attack is defended against with the Riding skill or Power, not Speed. If a character is pushed one pace in the saddle, then he is partially dislodged and must spend an action to reseat himself. If he does not, he suffers +1 Ob to all tests. If a character is pushed by two or more paces while in the saddle, he is unhorsed and hits the ground. The ground hit also counts as a Throw.
Expanded Gameplay

for purposes of damage. Use the lance successes (subtract the Riding/Power Natural Defenses) as the successes of the Throw, and the Speed of the lancer’s horse is the Power of the attack. See Thrown Against the Wall for more about damage from Throws.

Mounted Bowman

Being trained in mounted archery reduces the penalties for firing from horseback by one step:

- Shooting while the beastie is standing or walking: —
- Shooting while the beastie is trotting: +1 Ob
- Shooting while the beastie is sprinting: +2 Ob
- Mounted Bowman ignore the +1 Ob penalty for fighting from horseback.
- Mounted Bowman still gives the +2D bonus when using a sword from horseback. As Mounted Lancer.
- Mounted Bowman benefit from the first level of the Superior Position obstacle modifier when shooting at targets on foot.

Advancing Sorcery and Learning New Spells

By now sorcerer players have discovered that it is either impossible or suicidal to raise Sorcery by casting spells in the field. The average sorcerer throws about 10 dice to cast. According to the advancement rules that means that Obstacles 8 or higher are needed to earn tests. That would all be fine, if a Tax test didn’t follow closely on the heels of a casting test—Ob 8 is doable with 10 open-ended dice, but it is fatal with 5 or 6 Forte dice! There are other, saner methods for earning Sorcery tests.

By the way, if a character should happen to cast a spell and earn a test, it is logged for Sorcery, not Will. Of course, both Sorcery and Will can be raised via practice, just like any other skill or stat.

Sorcerer Advances Will

It’s easy to get Will tests as a wizard. Of course, they usually come at crucial times when failure means death—but at least you’ll get a test!

Being distracted while sustaining a spell requires a Will test in order to maintain concentration. These tests are made at the basic spell obstacle. Thus if a sorcerer with a Will of B5 is sustaining Turn Aside the Blade (Ob 4), and fails a Tax test from another spell he cast, he must make an Obstacle + Will test to keep Turn Aside going. Pass or fail, that is a Difficult test!

Sustaining spells occupies Will dice—for each spell sustained, the sorcerer sets aside one die to represent it. Those dice can’t be used for any tests while the spell is sustained—not for spell casting and not for Will tests. This effectively, if temporarily, lowers the sorcerer’s Will. Thus, if our sorcerer from the above example(Will B5) is sustaining Turn Aside the Blade, Chameleon, and Sense Magic, his current Will is B2. If he suffers a “May Not” and is forced to test in order to keep TAB up, he rolls two dice against an Obstacle of 4! That’s a Challenging Will test, no? Remember, the Difficulty level of tests is determined by the actual number of dice rolled, not the exponent of the skill or stat.

Of course, he is going to fail that test, but at least he’ll benefit from it. As always in instances of multiple tests, only log the most difficult one of the lot. In the...
Expanded Gameplay

Learning New Spells

The only thing I can liken Sorcery to is an evil cross-breed of English and Canton Chinese—an infinite collection of ambiguously defined words that either sound similar or that have different sounds but the same meaning, all garnished with a pronunciation of a thousand closely related tones.

Learning a new spell is a long, difficult, dangerous and complicated process. In order to begin, a sorcerer must have a written copy/translation of the incantation he wishes to master. Once the copy is acquired, the sorcerer may set about trying to understand the material and master its pronunciation.

There are three steps to learning a new spell:

First Reading

Make a Sorcery test vs the spell’s basic obstacle. This test is a skill test and may be modified using Working Carefully, Diligently or Quickly.

Time for the test is obstacle in months. Extra successes (Working Quickly) subtracts 10% of time per success.

If the test is successful, the character now has a basic understanding of the spell and may move on to Practicals.

If the test is failed, the character may not attempt to cast the spell, but may attempt the First Reading again. Use the Academic skills time for failure rules.

This Sorcery test is not open-ended.

Practicals

Here is the dangerous part. The sorcerer’s mastery is far from complete, he only has a basic grasp of the spell—he must cast it to fully understand it.

When casting the new spell the sorcerer is at a double obstacle penalty. So if a sorcerer is learning Turn Aside the Blade, an Ob 4 spell, his Practicals are at Ob 8. The sorcerer may cast his Practicals patiently, carefully or hastily. Minimum obstacle for the spell is 2 no matter what.

The sorcerer must cast the spell (pass or fail) as many times as his Perception Aptitude. No sitting around your hotel room setting the couch on fire. Like skill tests, these tests must be game-legitimate. After he has fulfilled his Aptitude requirement, he then moves on to Second Reading.

Second Reading

Second Reading is similar to First Reading except that now the sorcerer is trying to unlearn all the garbage and mistakes he made and get at the root of the spell—he is trying to get rid of that pesky double obstacle casting penalty!

Make a Sorcery test vs the spell’s basic obstacle. This test is a skill test and may be modified by working carefully, diligently, or quickly.

Time for the test is obstacle in weeks. Extra successes (Working Quickly) subtracts 10% of time per success.

If the test is successful, the character now has mastered the spell and may cast it as normal.

If the test is failed, the character must go through another set of Practicals before he may make another Second Reading test.

This Sorcery test is not open-ended.

Sorcery Tests for Advancement

Inside the juicy center of learning new spells is a fat Sorcery test: First and Second Reading. If a sorcerer with a B5 Sorcery is reading a spell with an Obstacle of 4, then he earns a Difficult sorcery test for advancement—in addition to potentially learning a new spell!

If a sorcerer wants to learn a spell whose obstacle is higher than his Sorcery exponent, he must either work Carefully or spend Artha to do so. (Either a point for Luck or three points for Inspiration. See Campaigning for more on Artha.)

Learning Sorcery as a New Skill

Sorcery must be taught to a character. He cannot pick it up on his own. It can be learned through written instructions (designed expressly for that purpose) or taught by another sorcerer.
Attacking through Materials with Hand Weapons

To hack through a wall, first a character must be able to Breach the material. If the Power of the attack is enough to cause a Breach, then the attack goes through and may hit whatever is on the other side. The material Strength is tacked on to the weapon’s Add when factoring how much damage was done to the target on the other side. It is hard to punch through walls and kill someone.

Roy has a Power of B8 (whoa!) and is trying to punch through a plaster and wood wall to surprise his dogged pursuer, Deckard. The Breach rating for this wall (Wooden wall: Surface: B5; Breach: B8; Integrity: 2; Strength: 2) is B8 — equal to Roy’s Power, so he is able to punch through! Roy Strik es at Deckard with an Ob 3 (Base 1 plus 2 for the Attacking Through Penalty). Roy gets 5 successes — normally enough to push the strike from an Incidental to a Mark (2 successes over the Obstacle for an Add 2 strike). However, since he is punching through a wall, he combines the Strength of the material with his own Add of 2 — the total Add for his punch becomes 4. Since he only got 2 successes over his obstacle it is not enough to push it from Incidental to Mark. However, he still smashes through the wooden slats and hits Deckard with an Incidental, a B4 for super-Roy! Definitely enough for the GM to call for Deckard to make a Steel test.
Shooting through Materials

Compare the Mark result of the missile weapon with the Breach rating of the material. If the Breach is higher, then the weapon cannot shoot through at all. If the weapon’s Mark is equal or greater than the Breach, then the attacking character may attempt to hurt whoever is hiding on the other side.

Roll to hit. Factor obstacle penalties as normal.

When shooting through materials, the Strength rating is used as a modifier for the Die of Fate. Subtract the Strength of the material from the DOF roll. If the total is zero or less the weapon still hits, but no damage is done. If the weapon has a VA, subtract that from the Strength of the material. The result is the penalty to the DOF.

A hunting bow has a Mark result of B7. It may not shoot through wooden walls, which have a Breach of B8. A crossbow has a Mark of B8, so it may shoot through wooden walls. If the crossbow hits, the player has a -1 penalty to the DOF. The material Strength is 2, minus 1 for the VA of the crossbow.

Thrown against the Wall

Being smacked against a brick wall really hurts, and characters who are thrown can possibly take damage on the PTGS. The damage is based on the effectiveness of the Throw, the Power of the thrower, and the stiffness of the material the character is thrown into.

Factor damage like a Strike with a weapon. Use the Strength of the material as the Weapon Power, add this to character’s Power to factor IMS. This the Mark result of the throw. (Divide by half for the Incidental result, add half for the Superb result.) The Add for the attack is always 2. The extra successes from the Throw count for Strike successes—one success is an Incidental, three for a Mark, five for a Superb.

Zhu Kwan throws Kyosho-Gin into the wall of the temple where they are dueling. Zhu rolls four successes on his Throw, Kyosho-Gin rolls two successes on his Natural defenses—he is thrown two paces. Zhu’s Power is 6 and the wall of this temple to Lord Earth is granite, Strength 5. (Power 6 plus Strength 5 = Mark Throw result of B11, and an Incidental of B6.) Zhu got two successes, an Incidental Hit—a B6 wound to Kyosho-Gin. Had Zhu got one more success he would have killed his opponent with a B11 wound!
Characters with White shade Power who attack with their bare hands add 3 to their Mark result before factoring their IMS.

Characters who have heroic and supernatural Power and wish to do damage in the Gray or White scale must have the Hands of Stone trait.

#### Heroic and Supernatural Attributes

**Gray and White Shade Stats for Aptitude**

Characters who have Gray and White shade stats have a greater ability for learning skills. Subtract two from the standard Aptitude for Gray Shade, subtract three from the standard Aptitude for White Shade. Thus, a G6 Agility has an Aptitude of 2 for Agility-rooted skills. A W6 Perception has an Aptitude of 1 for Perception-rooted skills.

**Heroic and Supernatural Mortal Wounds**

Characters whose Power and Forte are both Gray or White mark their Mortal Wound in the Gray or White where appropriate. The wound tolerances must be stretched from the Superficial in the Black to the Mortal Wound in the Gray or White.

**Gray Reflexes—Drool**

A G6 Reflexes is the same as a B6 Reflexes in every way except one. Gray Reflexes act twice for each “action.” Consider each “action” an interval. A B6 Reflexes acts on six intervals in an Exchange; 1 action per interval, two intervals per volley. G6 Reflexes acts on six intervals during the Exchange as well, 2 actions per interval, two intervals per volley.

*Legolas and an ancient Black Orc Chief are fighting. Legolas has a G6 Ref, the Black Orc has a B6. The Black Orc acts twice per volley, his first action goes at the same time as Legolas’ does. However, before the Orc gets his next action Legolas has an action in between—his second action of that “interval.”*

For the Second Action of the volley the characters would act simultaneously again, but after that Legolas would get another action—his second action for the second interval of the first volley. Phew!

The same goes for Supernatural Reflexes, except they get three actions per interval.

**Heroic and Supernatural Health Steel and Faith**

No special mechanics for these attributes—aside from their lowered DNs!
Heroic and Supernatural Armor vs Weapons

Armor can only serve its wearer against attacks of the same or lesser shades. If a mundane weapon attacks mundane armor, a normal armor save is made. However, if a heroic weapon attacks mundane armor, no roll is allowed.

Versus Armor and Shade

The Versus Armor of a weapon is ignored if the striking weapon is a darker shade than the armor being struck.

So a regular sword (run of the mill or superior quality, it doesn’t matter) has no VA against Gray Armor

Armor Failure and Shade

Also, failed armor dice don’t count at all if the weapon that caused them is a darker shade than the armor being struck.

This does not mean that a person wearing heroic or supernatural armor is invulnerable to attacks from lesser shade weapons. The bearers of such awesome gear are still subject to their own mortality—if an attack sneaks through or the armor is bypassed they can still be killed. Heroic and supernatural armors must still test their Protection dice against mundane blades. If the armor works the attack is deflected, if it fails then the wearer is wounded as normal.

Heroic and supernatural armors will, however, protect against heroic and supernatural attacks. The normal armor rules apply for Versus Armor and Protection dice when the weapon and armor are of a like shade.

Spells, Shade and IMS

Sometimes spells and prayers add dice to an ability. The dice added are the shade of the skill/attribute that cast the spell.

Sometimes a damaging effect spell/prayer will do enough damage to go past B16, into the Gray. This is perfectly acceptable; that is the way it was meant to be. Just keep counting pips after B16 up on into the Gray. Any mortal touched by such a powerful spell is turned into goo.

Heroic and Supernatural Power and Weapons IMS

Beings with heroic and supernatural Power may attempt to use their full strength through a weapon. There are two aspects to this: A demigod with a Power of G4 who is wielding a regular ol’ baseball bat can choose to do mundane damage or attempt to do heroic damage. If the character chooses to do mundane damage, then his IMS is the same as if he were wielding a mundane weapon; he adds the bat’s Power to his bare fist Mark result. The damage is in the black.

If the character chooses to attempt heroic damage with a mundane blade, roll the DOF after applying the IMS damage for each Strike, Counterstrike, etc. On a 1-3 the weapon has disintegrated. If the character has supernatural Power and is attempting to use a mundane weapon, the material disintegrates on a 1-5 on the DOF.

Heroic and Supernatural Weapons and the IMS

Characters using weapons listed with a Gray or White shade damage use the shade of the weapon being used rather than the shade of their Power.

Heroic and Supernatural Forte and Bleeding

Beings with a heroic Forte bleed six times slower than their mundane brethren.

Beings with a supernatural Forte bleed nine times slower.

A Dragon with a W10 Mortal Wound who receives a W9 blow, a Traumatic Wound, would bleed to Mortal in 18 hours.

Heroic and Supernatural Equipment

Equipment that is heroic or supernatural in nature uses its own DN for its own equipment tests unless specified otherwise.
Some are gaming, some are drinking,
Some are living without thinking;
And of those who make the racket,
Some are stripped of coat and jacket;
Some get clothes of finer feather,
Some are cleaned out altogether;
No one there dreads death’s invasion,
But all drink in emulation.

—Some Are Gaming,
song author unknown.
The Long Run
Beyond the Numbers of Character

This game system can be used to play one-offs, one-nighters or a short series of adventures, but it really favors the extended campaign. In a campaign, characters change and develop—even beyond just watching their skill and stat numbers climb. There are a number of other ways which Burning Wheel fosters character development.

Characters evolve not just as they are played, but by how they are played. Players focus on certain aspects of the character while letting other aspects slip away. This happens because of the demands of the campaign, the abilities, likes and dislikes of the player. To represent this, after a series of adventures—the completion of a story arc—it is possible to gain new traits, lose unused ones, and change Instincts and Beliefs.

Finally there is a run-of-the-mill RPG points-award system. We call it Artha (pronounced “Ar-tah”). Artha is points that players get for successfully completing adventures and roleplaying a character. The points allow players to substantially modify tests and pull off some seriously heroic acts.

Earning Artha, Developing Traits, Instincts and Beliefs

Artha

Spiritual Rewards in the Land of Fire

Artha is a meager indicator of the character’s power and success in life. Once gained it is meant to be devoted to earning more power and success. Artha will help you maximize your potential on this earthly plane and, with luck aid, you in transcending to the next. If Burning Wheel is a violent and soulless game, then Artha is a scrap of spirituality for us to cling to.

Artha is accrued and spent in points. It will come as a boon from being yourself and staying true to your idiom, no matter what you believe.

Artha is Earned through Roleplaying

Idiom
1-3pts. Roleplaying your character, however dastardly or noble, garners reward. The better you roleplay, the more Artha you get. I tend to give out idiom artha on a sliding scale. Players who consistently roleplay well but don’t push themselves get one or two points a run, no matter how brilliant they are. Players who flash brilliantly and, for a moment, truly embody their character and take get two or three points.

Goals
1-4pts. Accomplishing goals will earn Artha for the group/party/team/company. Goals can be set forth by the GM or by the players. They need not be grand, in fact most often they are simple. “We should recon the bandit’s hideout and find out who is paying them.” Accomplishing this simple goal will earn the characters clues to completing their other goals, thus a reward is fitting. Simple goals like that above earn a single point of Artha, grand goals like swaying a nation to your cause, winning a war, or closing an infernal gate earn three or four points.

Teamwork
1pt. Working together gets the whole party 1 pt of Artha.

Rolling with the Punches
1pt. Graceful handling of unexpected situations.

Linchpin
1pt. Being voted the MVP of the night.
Nimble Hands
2-10pts. Artha may be spent to reduce the time needed to complete a task. It costs 2 pts to reduce time by 25%, 5 pts to reduce time by 50% and 10 pts to reduce time by 75%. Obviously, not for martial tasks or spell casting.

Will to Live
2pts. A character must spend Artha to buy the chance for a Will to Live test to survive a Mortal Wound.

Epiphany
A stat can be permanently shifted one shade to the right for the cost of 30 pts of Artha. A skill, Faith or Steel can be Epiphanied for 25 pts of Artha.

A skill can be temporarily shifted one shade to the right for 10 pts of Artha. In this case the epiphany lasts for one test or series of tests.

Aristeia
10 pts. This temporarily nullifies all wound modifiers and other like penalties (but not death). Character must be wounded or impeded before the Aristeia is summoned. Aristeia lasts until the character has succeeded in a short, immediate, attainable goal or until he is killed trying to accomplish said goal.

Investiture
Artha may be invested in a material object in order to render it “special.” It doesn’t make the object any more potent than it was and it won’t make it magical. But investiture will lend the object a certain undefinable quality, the object becomes “lucky;” less likely to be lost, less likely to be ruined or damaged in the hurly-burly of life. Indiana Jones’ hat is a great example of Artha Investiture. No matter how bad the situation, the hat stays on, stays near or always manages to work its way back. Of course, Indiana goes out of his way not to lose it! Investiture can’t help you if you just abandon your investment to fate!

The Dread Lord invests 5 pts, which is quite a lot, in his sword, the Sword of Kings. In a duel with his rival, the Prince, the Dread Lord is incapacitated and the sword is captured. The Artha in the sword does not prevent it from being stolen from a foolish owner! However, later on in the story, the Dread Lord once again meets the Prince in single combat. This time the Prince drops the sword in the fray and, as the Dread Lord dives for it, the sword practically leaps into his hand (a moment before the Prince can recover it!). Artha well spent by the Dread Lord, who now turns on his rival with his rightful weapon, prepared to wreak vengeance!
Awarding Traits

Sometimes, through good luck and good roleplaying, a player can develop a “trait” for his character. It occurs naturally, a consistent pattern emerges—something that “always happens” around that character. If a player always roleplays in a certain way—if he always runs from a fight. Or performs in a consistently spectacular fashion, he is eligible for a new trait.

At the end of the campaign the GM and the players nominate characters to receive new traits. All players and the GM vote on whether or not a character should receive a new trait. Unanimous decision gets the character a new trait. Characters can be awarded Die, Call-On or Character traits. It depends on the circumstance.

We had a player who always spent Artha on his Health tests for Recovery and always rolled so well that his character healed very quickly. At the end of the campaign he nominated himself for the Wolverine trait and cited his examples:

The character had taken three severe wounds in the course of the campaign—one had cost him his hand! All of the players voted affirmative for Wolverine and I gave my nod of approval.

In another example, one character was the leader of a vast army, a warlord of untold power. But he had a secret: he couldn’t really fight—he would get his ass kicked every time he went into a melee. So the other characters, his inner circle, created a rule: “The Dread Lord never enters hand to hand combat.” Well even so, the player couldn’t restrain himself, he would always get heated up, jump into the fray and cause lots of trouble for the other players. At the end of the campaign another player nominated him for the Rash trait. The vote was unanimous, even he voted for it, and it went into his trait list.

There are certain times in an adventure when the circumstances cause a player to spontaneously generate a trait. If the character loses a hand, then he gets the One-Handed trait. It’s obvious, but the new trait is necessary to remind the player of his new handicap. Madness is another example. If a priest goes mad during an adventure in the temple of ancient and forgotten gods, then his new insanities, Fear of the Ocean, Fear of the Dark, Repulsed by Fish are immediately added onto his sheet as character traits. No need to wait until the end of the campaign.

Awarding Tests

Skills and stats go up as players test them in game. However, occasionally a stat or skill gets neglected by the dice—something that was often relied on but never actually rolled. Forte is a great example of this. During my campaigns my players are forced to push their characters to their limits: Forced to endure sleep deprivation, starvation and physical hardship. But only very rarely, under the most adverse conditions, do I make them actually roll a Forte test. I generally assume that, due to gravity of the conditions, the characters are capable of pushing themselves to the limits of human endurance. For me it is enough that the players are overwrought and pushed to the limits of their mental endurance.

So at the end of the campaign, I usually just have the players note Challenging Forte tests (for pushing their characters to the limits of their endurance, even though we didn’t roll the dice). And if the campaign involved lots of running around (as it often does), I give out Challenging Speed tests as well. If it involved climbing mountains or constantly hauling around heavy packs, then a Power test is in order. And so on, until the rigors of the adventure have been properly rewritten into the skin and bones of the character.

There is no set system for this. Basically, overcoming the demands the campaign set before the characters should be rewarded with a Challenging or Difficult test at the end of the campaign.

These are bonus tests and rewards given by the GM in recognition of good game play and achievement.
Losing Traits

Sometimes a character will start with a trait that either doesn’t fit or never gets used in the course of the campaign. If this is the case, then at the end of the campaign the trait disappears as the character grows and changes.

For example, the warlord in the example above actually paid for the Fingerspritzenfult trait. It is an awesome trait and should have made him a fantastic general. But he could never make it work. He was so focused on inspiring his army, rather than actually leading it, that he never got the opportunity to outwit his opponents on the field. On the few occasions he did command the strategy of his army, he was such a terrible general that no silly trait could have saved him. So at the end of the campaign, I apologized to him and told him that Fingerspritzenful had to go. He thought about it for a while and agreed with me.

This house cleaning is imperative. It keeps characters from becoming fat with “pull it out of my ass once” traits.

A priest had the Iron Will Trait. The player never played it. He was the most pliable and wishy-washy priest the other players and I had ever met. He never stood up for anything. Yet whenever he had to test his Will he would shout, “But I have Iron Will!” Uh-huh. He had the trait, but he couldn’t play it! At the end of the campaign that trait was gone. In fact, it was replaced with the House of Cards trait—whenever his hand was forced, he collapsed!

Changing Instincts

Players love to change their characters’ Instincts as soon as anything bad or unexpected happens. This is not allowed. Players caught doing this should be flogged. Instincts can change, but there must be time and reason for the change.

A farmer’s Instincts would be along the lines of: “Always throw a rock at the crows,” “Never stand behind the horse or mule” and “When the wife starts hollerin’, get down on one knee and pray.”

One day, his landlord’s men come and demand service to his Lord and take him off to stand in front of charging cavalry. After a summer of fighting, our incredibly lucky and somewhat traumatized farmer returns home with some different instincts: “If I happen to have a pike and I am charged by horsemen, I set the butt end in the ground and hold on for dear life,” “If unarmed and charged by a knight, I sprint away and fling myself to the ground” and, of course, “Never stand behind the horse or mule.”

Circumstance changed our farmer; it will take him some time to become reacquainted to farm life.

Changing instincts is allowed, but it takes place after adventures, sometimes in the middle of a campaign—it’s likely that if our lucky farmer hadn’t learned those new instincts as quickly as he did, he wouldn’t be alive to help us out with this example.

The GM is final arbiter of whether or not an Instinct is appropriate. A player should discuss the matter with GM before he changes anything.
Changing Beliefs

A player usually wants to change his Beliefs right after the GM “screws” him or leans on him to do something that he didn’t want to do. This usually indicates that he didn’t really believe in his Belief anyway.

GM: The whole place is in flames at this point. You’ve got the money, but Angus is still in there.

Player: Ah, that’s too bad.

GM: Isn’t one of your Beliefs, “My dog is my best friend?” You can hear him barking.

Player glances at his sheet nonchalantly.

Player: Yeah, but I’m not going back in there.

GM: OK. Raises eyebrows to indicate “I’m going to remember this.”

Obviously, the player never really cared about Angus in the first place. The Belief should immediately be erased. And the player will receive a point or two less Artha at the end of the adventure for not roleplaying his character and sticking to his guns.

When a player doesn’t follow a Belief because it is inconvenient for him, then the Belief should be erased from his character’s sheet and the character should be considered for the Callow trait. Not to mention that he won’t get Artha for Idiom.

However, Beliefs can and do change over time. Characters change religion, change jobs, have life-affirming experiences, whatever. During these proper narrative junctures, a player should feel free to change his character’s Beliefs without penalty.

Wealth may be yours, wisdom too, and you may have beauty; but if pride touch them all will turn to dross.

—Inscription, Great Gallery of Le Crac des Chevaliers
### Appendix: Weapons

#### Melee Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon Type</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>WSpd</th>
<th>VA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primitive Gear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bare Fist</td>
<td></td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wooden Club²</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spear¹,²</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe¹,²</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Unwieldy</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knife, Shiv</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run-of-the-Mill Gear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spear¹,²,³</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe¹,²</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammer¹,²</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Unwieldy</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirk</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mace</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superior Quality Gear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pike¹,²</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword²</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe¹,²</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammer¹,²</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dagger</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Mace³</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Two handed
2. May Great Strike
3. Extended, 3 pace, striking distance.

---

#### Missile Weapons

- **Hunting Bow**
  - I: B4
  - M: B7
  - S: B10
  - VA -

- **Long Bow**
  - I: B6
  - M: B9
  - S: B12
  - VA 2

- **Crossbow**
  - I: B5
  - M: B8
  - S: B11
  - VA 1

- **Heavy Crossbow**
  - I: B6
  - M: B9
  - S: B13
  - VA 2

- **Pistol**
  - I: B4
  - M: B8
  - S: B12
  - VA *

- **Arquebus**
  - I: B5
  - M: B8
  - S: B12
  - VA *

*VA by Range: Pointblank: VA 4; Short: VA 3; Medium: VA 2; Long: VA 0.

---

#### Found Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>WSpd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hilt/Butt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedknob</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spike/Nail</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bottle</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mallet</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broomhandle</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lantern</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chair</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All Found Weapons have an Add of 2.

---

#### Modifiers for the DOF

- If the shooter rolls double his Ob, add one (+1) to the DOF roll.
- If the shooter rolls successes equal to four times his Ob, add two (+2) to the DOF roll.
- If firing at long range for the weapon, subtract one (-1) from the DOF roll.
### Thrown Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>VA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baseballs</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small rocks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small knives</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighted knives</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuriken</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelin</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Thrown Weapon Ranges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Pointblank</th>
<th>Lob</th>
<th>Throw</th>
<th>Hurl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baseball</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x5</td>
<td>x10</td>
<td>x30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
<td>x6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x5</td>
<td>x15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small knives</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
<td>x4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighted knives</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x5</td>
<td>x10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuriken</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x6</td>
<td>x10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelin</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x10</td>
<td>x20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>x1</td>
<td>x3</td>
<td>x6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*All Ranges are in Paces. All Multipliers are based on character’s Power.

**Pointblank:** Targets at PB range are -2 Ob to hit. If the target is closer than PB, it is +4 Ob to hit.

**Lob:** 1 Action; **Throw:** 2 Actions; **Hurl:** 3 Actions

### Specialty Arrow and Bolt heads

**Arrow heads**

- **Hunting arrow:** Standard IMS, VA, and DOF
- **Armor Piercer:** -1 IMS, +1 VA
- **Leaf Head:** +1 pip damage to IMS, -1 VA
- **Frog Crotch:** +1 IMS, +1 DOF, +1 Ob to hit, -1 VA
- **Blunt Head:** -1 IMS, -1 VA, -1 DOF
- **Barb Tip:** As hunting arrow but the character takes an additional Mark result wound if the barbed arrow is removed. Ob 4 Field Dressing test or Ob 3 Surgery test to remove arrow properly.

**Bolt Heads**

- **Helmeted:** standard IMS, VA, and DOF
- **Mallet Head:** +1 DOF, reduce ranges by 10 paces per category
- **Fisted Bolt:** +1 IMS, +1 DOF, +1 Ob to hit
- **Spear Tip:** +1 VA, -1 IMS
- **Horsehead:** -1 VA, +1 Ob to hit, reduced range as Mallet head

*These powerful arrows are designed to knock riders off their horses. Each stage on the DOF also causes a Push, where the successes are determined by the DOF. Target rolls Speed to resist push. Missed successes count as paces staggered. If the rider misses the obstacle by two successes he is knocked off his mount.

**Crossbow Horsehead:** I: Ob 2 Push; M: Ob 3 Push; S: Ob 4 Push.

**Heavy Crossbow Horsehead:** I: Ob 2 Push; M: Ob 4 Push; S: Ob 5 Push.
Appendix: Martial Arts

Expanded Counterstrikes

A counterstrike has many variations. To inspire you to greater martial arts prowess, I’ll list a few. These variations should be limited to characters with applicable martial skills or styles:

**Locking-Block**

Dice are divided between “block” and counterattack as normal, but rather than “striking” back, the defender uses her remaining dice to attempt to Lock his opponent. When using a Locking Block or Counter-Lock, a defender does not have to use the Get Inside action in order to apply a Lock to his opponent. See Lock in Melee Mechanics.

**Throwing- or Pushing-Block**

Dice are divided between “block” and counterattack. But rather than “strike” back the defender uses her dice to Throw or Push her opponent. When using a Throwing Block or Push Block, a defender does not have to use the Get Inside action in order to use a Throw on her opponent. See Throw in Melee Mechanics.

**Counter-Disarm**

Dice are divided as with a normal Counterstrike, but the defender may attempt to disarm the attacker with his “counter attack” dice as per the Disarming Strike action. The obstacle for a Counter-Disarm is only half of the attacker’s weapon skill.

Specialist Martial Arts

In the Burning Wheel skill system, Boxing, martial arts, and weapons skills are assumed to cover wide varieties of styles and experiences. Generally, the fighters use what is best available to them at the time; there is no preference for one style over another.

However, in the campaign that I run, my players were very eager to develop the martial arts abilities of their characters. The campaign has an Eastern flavor to it and, using that context, we have built martial arts specialist rules for developing stylized arts.

Learning “Special Moves”

Each “special move” is listed with an obstacle. This is used only to learn the move. It is not the obstacle to use the move.

In order to master the maneuver and add it to his repertoire, a character must successfully test his skill vs the obstacle three times. Each test takes three days, pass or fail. The successes do not have to be consecutive—a character may fail many times before he succeeds even once! No Artha except for Luck may be used for these tests. Tests to learn special moves cannot be made “in stance,” either.

Chima is mastering Tae Poong Do. His current skill is B5 and he wants to learn the Flying Kick. The young master returns to his temple to study and practice. He tests his skill vs Obstacle 5. It takes six tries before five successes come up. 18 days have passed and Chima has one successful test. He continues to practice and tests his skill another five times before another five success roll comes up—another 15 days, for a running total of 33. Chima presses on and gets lucky; his next test comes up all five successes. He has passed three tests against the Ob 5 of the Flying Kick in 12 attempts, for a total of 36 days of training.

Learning special moves never counts as standard practice. The character benefits from this time in other ways!

Tae Poong Do

Tae Poong Do (TPD) is a variation on traditional tae kwon do. The art focuses on the attack, primarily with the legs, and training the body into a hardened, weapon-like state. Movement is crucial to this art. Constant dashing and side-stepping mimic the winds upon which this art is based. Opponents will find it very hard to pin down a practitioner of TPD.

- Tae Poong Do has all basic moves available.
- Tae Poong Do suffers from all basic combat modifiers.
Additional Basics (come with skill):

Rising Attack- Practitioners may kick out of a fall and leap to their feet. They stand in one action and may attack as they stand.

Tae Kwan- Punch
Nam Poong- Front kick
Dong Poong- Right roundhouse kick
Sauh Poong- Left roundhouse kick
Book Poong- Axe kick

Special Moves/Abilities:

Ob 1 No-Face Kick
TPDers have no rear flank and are always considered to be facing their opponent no matter how their back is turned.

Ob 2 Tae Kwan
Push kick. Damage as normal kick plus effects of Push.

Palgi scores four successes with a Push Kick against his foe. That’s a Mark result for damage, which is applied before the Push. His foe now tests his Speed as if he had been pushed and gets 2 successes. Subtract those from Palgi’s four successes—the foe gets staggered back two paces (as per standard Push rules).

Ob 3 Tae Poong
Circle kick, Hook kick or Wheel kick. Adds +1 to the IMS of unarmed damage when this kick is thrown. If the attacker misses, he must spend an action recovering. The next action is lost and is considered a hesitation as the attacker re-orientates himself.

Ob 3 Yong Poong
Sweep kick. Skill vs Ob equal to target’s Speed. If successful, the target is knocked off of his feet.

Ob 4 Iron Fist Level 1
Toughening of the hands and feet. Adds +1 Power to unarmed melee attacks.

Ob 5 Une Cheong Baram “The Divine Wind”
This leaping or flying kick gives +2 to IMS for unarmed attacks. If the attacker misses or is foiled, then he must spend two actions recovering. This Strike may not be Blocked. TPDer may sprint into this kick with a +1 Ob modifier (down from +4 Ob).

Ob 5 Iron Fist Level 2
Toughening of the hands and feet. Additional Iron Fist training increases the Power of unarmed melee attacks by a further +1. At this point the practitioner also gets a Versus Armor rating of 1 for barefisted attacks.

Ob 6 Tae Den Ji Da
As Throw except target is tossed two paces per extra success. See Throwing rules for more detail.

Ob 6 Iron Fist Level 3
Toughening of the hands and feet. Additional Iron Fist training increases the Power of unarmed melee attacks by a further +1.

Ob 7 Koin Poong
Great Leap. Test skill. Horizontal, running leap: 3 paces per success; Standing leap: 2 paces per success. Vertical: Standing leap: .5 pace per success; Running: 1 pace per success.

Ob 7 Kal Kwon
Weapon Breaker. The only defensive special move in the art. TPDer’s skill vs. foe’s Strike. Successes go to Block, extra successes after successful Block go into breaking the weapon. Obstacle to break: Ob 2 for wooden weapons, Ob 3 for metal. +1 Obstacle if the weapons are “superior quality.”

Ob 9 Whirlwind
By focussing all of his qi into a single fearsome blast of energy the master can temporarily shade-shift his Reflexes one step to the right. The shift lasts one Exchange. The master must meditate for four hours before he may unleash the whirlwind again.

Kimdo
Kimdo is a softer art than Tae Poong Do. This art centers on teaching balance and awareness rather than attack and hardening.

The use of Kimdo in self defense is founded on four basic ideas: Avoid, Warn, Lure and Kill. If confronted with an aggressor, the martial artist first attempts to avoid him and disengage. If the attacker persists, the Kimdoer warns him that he is treading on dangerous ground and should desist. This warning can be given in a number of ways: a Great Push, a Disarm or even a Throw. If the warning is ignored, the Kimdo practitioner is taught to then lure the attacker into lashing out at her. This usually results in the Kimdoer Locking her opponent up. At this
point, the Kimdo practitioner is taught that it is fully in her right to kill her attacker. Usually, this is done quite swiftly by applying a Killing Lock.

Kimdo practitioners may not use the Strike, Feint or Counterstrike maneuvers, they also may not take the Aggressive stance. All other maneuvers and penalties stand as normal for Kimdo.

**Basic Practitioners of the Art Benefit from:**

*Landing Roll*

Kim Do allows martial artists to test their skill against the effects of a Throw or Push. The martial artist rolls out of the fall; Successes knock off thrower’s successes as a Block to a Strike in regards to damage. The Kim Doer is still thrown, but is unhurt.

*Counter-Feint*

Kimdoers may throw a “Counter-Feint” move. This maneuver counteracts Feints. If played against the Feint maneuver, the Kimdoer “out-Feints” the feinter. Instead of being faked out of position, the Kimdoer may Push, Great Push, Throw or Lock the attacker. It must be scripted whether the move is a Counter-Feint-Push or a Counter-Feint-Lock.

*Balance and Awareness*

For Locks, Throws, Pushes, Charges and Avoids Kimdoers use their skill when performing these maneuvers. They also use their skill as their Natural Defenses when defending against them.

**Special Moves/Abilities:**

**Ob 1 Counter-Push**

Kimdo meets most attacks by redirecting the energy of the incoming blow and sending it elsewhere. Mechanically, the maneuver is akin to a Block. Roll skill vs attack. If the Ob is met, then the attack is deflected. Extra successes over the attacker's count as a Push. The Push must move in the direction of the attacker’s momentum.

**Ob 2 Counter-Lock**

Kimdo can easily deal with flailing arms and slashing swords. The mechanics of Counter-Lock are the same as Counterstrike; divide dice between Blocking and Locking. This Lock does not require that the user be Inside to apply it.

**Ob 3 Counter Throw**

Similar to Counter-Push except that the attacker is taken off his feet and moved in the direction of the defender's choosing. Initial successes go to deflecting the attack. Extra successes count as a Throw. Use the basic Throw mechanics.

**Ob 4 Counter-Disarm**

Dice are divided as per Counterstrike, but the Kimdoer may attempt to Disarm the attacker with the “Strike” dice. The obstacle for the Disarm is half the attacker's skill, rounded up.

**Ob 5 Great Push**

Like Push, except that the target is staggered two paces for each additional success over the target’s Natural Defenses roll.

**Ob 5 Don’t Feint on Me**

Expanding on some of the basic forms of his art the Kimdoer learns to sense his opponent’s movements and predict her attacks. Whenever an attacker uses a Feint (against a Kimdo counter move) she Strikes as normal, but the Kimdoer is allowed to defend himself with an Avoid. The Kimdoer must retreat from the attack.

**Ob 6 Killing Lock**

Practitioners learn how to apply pressure when Locking an opponent. A Kimdoer may apply a damaging Lock without having to reduce his opponent to zero dice. Also, when applying a “damaging lock,” use the skill exponent in place of Power to factor the IMS. See the Lock rules for more on damaging Locks.

**Ob 7 Centered Way**

The master can never be moved off his feet against his will. Pushes, Throws and Charges have no effect on the character.

**Ob 8 Touch of a Feather, Weight of a Mountain**

When in close proximity with another character, the master of Kimdo can sense his opponent’s movements and counteract them. When the master is “on the Inside,” his opponent must reveal his next action to him. The first action of each subsequent volley must also be revealed (so long as the master remains Inside). If the Kimdo master Gets Inside in the middle of an exchange or volley, he may alter his action to suit his need without a forfeit penalty.

**Takashido**

This is a very demanding sword art that rigorously trains the qi of the student and focuses on speed and precision.

Takashido requires that the swordsman always be in motion. If the swordsman cannot move his full dash move in a particular volley, he suffers +2 Ob to all Takashido tests until he is free to move.
Ob 2 Gliding Feet
Takashido ignores the Dash movement penalty in melee combat.

Ob 3 Blazing Wings
Takashido swordsmen learn to fight with a long sword and small sword. Both swords may be used to attack in one action; divide skill dice between the swords and Strike. If not being used to attack, the off-sword counts as a 2D shield.

Ob 3 Water Sheath
Once properly trained, the swordsman may draw his sword in one action rather than two.

Ob 4 Sweeping Wind Strike
Using movement and fast sword work, Takashido can attack multiple targets on one flank in one action. Divide skill dice between targets and roll for individual Strikes.

Ob 4 Glittering Star-Catcher
Once this maneuver is mastered the swordsman may Block Great Strikes.

Ob 5 Weaving Snake
Takashido trains the body to become one with the sword, and trains the sword never to be still. The Weaving Snake discipline teaches how to coil and uncoil the body, twist, revolve and strike around opponents. Takashido is used to Get Inside and Push. Weaving Snake also replaces the swordsman skill as his Natural Defenses against Get Inside, Lock, Throw and Push.

Ob 5 Pillar of Heaven
The swordsman may catch weapons with his own blades. When raising a Block, extra successes go into a Lock maneuver. The attacker may resist with Natural Defenses Agility or Power. The Lock counts against the “weapon skill” of the opponent. Thus the Pillar of Heaven can be used to reduce the opponent’s skill so that he may be more easily disarmed. The Pillar of Heaven locking block only applies to the weapon, not the wielder, however all other Block and Lock rules apply.

Ob 6 Viper’s Tooth
Once properly trained the swordsman may strike from the scabbard. Essentially he can Draw and Strike in the same action.

Ob 7 Coiled Strike
The swordsman focuses his qi and leaps past his target striking it from behind. This maneuver requires an entire volley to perform. The swordsman tenses and then leaps at the last second. He must start his attack about one pace less than his volley sprint distance from his target. Swordsman travels full sprint distance in the last action of the volley and may Strike without penalty. The target is +3 Ob to strike at the oncoming swordsman. If the swordsman misses his Coiled Strike he spends one action recovering.

Ob 8 Sword of Lightning, Sheath of Cloud
Building off the force of the Viper’s Tooth the swordsman is trained to draw his sword as if it were a flash of lightning. When the swordsman draws and Strikes, it counts as a “lightning strike.” It is as if he bid an action to Strike—his strike will precede any other non-bid action in the volley. The sword must start sheathed in order to use this technique.

Ob 9 Leaves of Autumn Strike
This technique focuses the swordsman’s qi to the utmost. It requires one volley of inaction to focus, after which the swordsman may strike any and all targets within his volley sprinting distance. The Leaves of Autumn Strike happens in one single action. It may not be used to strike the same target twice. All strikes are done at full skill dice. After use, this power requires eight hours of meditation before it can be performed again.
Detailed Combat Example

Combat is not the focus of Burning Wheel, but it is important to the game and, let’s face it, it’s fun. In the scenarios that the players will be acting out, combat is a distinct possibility. Knights Templar, Elven Rangers and Great Orcs tend to get into a tangle every so often. You know?

Special attention has been paid to the details of combat within this game, so that when the time comes to draw swords and attack, the players can feel that they are being accurately represented on the field. The example below combines all of the aspects of the previous mechanics sections.

“Von Goten’s Story Part II” in Detail

The Players

Von Goten

Pet: B4 Wi: B4 Ag: B4 Sp: B4 Po: B6 Fo: B4
Re: B4 He: B6 Ste: B6 Mo: B11

PTGS

Su: B4 Le: B6 Me: B7 Se: B9 Tr: B9 Mc: B11


Gear: Helmet, Mail Hauberk, Arms and Half Leggings; Bastard Sword, Dirk, Sword Belt, Money Pouch, Field Dressing Kit, Boots, Leather Gloves and a Rain Cloak.

Armor: 5 Dice/DN 4 (4 Dice w/o Helmet)

Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1

Dirk: Pow –, Add 1, VA –

Traits: Loyal, Fearless.

Rahgash (Orc with Crossbows)

Pet: B6 Wi: B6 Ag: B6 Sp: B6 Po: B6 Fo: B6
Re: B6 He: B6 Ste: B6 Mo: B6

PTGS

Su: B6 Le: B7 Me: B8 Se: B9 Tr: B9 Mc: B9

Skills: Bow B4, Knives B3, Stealthy B3, Brawling B4, Sword B3

Gear: 2 Loaded Crossbows, Knife, Hide leggings, Fur Cloak and Hobnailed boots.

Buza (Orc with Knives)

Pet: B3 Wi: B3 Ag: B4 Sp: B4 Po: B5 Fo: B3
Re: B4 He: B4 Ste: B6 Mo: B10

PTGS

Su: B3 Le: B5 Me: B7 Se: B9 Tr: B9 Mc: B9

Skills: Bow B3, Knives B4, Stealthy B3, Brawling B4, Sword B3

Gear: 2 Knives, Hide leggings, Fur Cloak and Hobnailed boots.

Armor: 2 Dice/DN 6

Rusty Knife: Pow –, Add 1, VA –

I M S
B3 B4 B6

Traits: Twisted, Loathsome, Fanged Maw, Black-Blooded, Claw-Handed, Lynx-Eyed, Cannibal; Ferocious, Cunning, Hateful.

The Story

To start, the GM asks Pete, Von Goten’s player, to make a Perception test. The test is Ob 2—but the GM doesn’t tell Pete that. Pete rolls and gets two successes, enough to see the beacon and realize something is amiss.

“The signal beacon!” Von Goten started in alarm. Through the dismal curtain of the downpour he could make out the shining white light glimmering atop the gate tower.

“Matthias! He grabbed his Samagosian friend by the collar and pulled him down, so his mouth was level with his ear. “Matthias, the beacon! They are raiding,” Von Goten had to scream to be heard over the din of the torrent. Rain ricocheted off the metal bowl of his helmet, he could barely hear himself shout. “Go fetch Tristam and Tomás. In the chapel, go!”
The barbarian knits his black brows together and chewed his lip in response. Hefting his broad-bladed spear, the Samogian dashed off across the courtyard toward the tower from which they had begun their patrol.

The GM informs Pete that it is dark and raining heavily—+2 to Perception Obstacles due to the rain and +4 Ob for the darkness. However, Von Goten is carrying a lantern which reduces his Perception penalties to +1 Ob immediately around him. Also, Von Goten has a +2 Ob penalty to Perception tests while wearing his helmet.

As he watched his friend disappear into the gloom, a splash of cold fear ran down Von Goten’s spine; night made the tight of his helmet’s confines even darker.

Pete decides he should at least give his character a remote chance at seeing something, so Von Goten removes his headgear.

Casting aside fear, he pressed on toward the main bastion. He couldn’t see a damned thing. After he had gone a short way, he stepped under the pitiful shelter of the cooper’s awning. The man-at-arms set his lantern down and began to unbuckle his headgear.

Unbeknownst to Pete or Von Goten, two Orcs lurk up ahead, forward scouts who slipped into the fortress to cause mayhem. The Orcs are moving Stealthily—two successes each. They both carry knives, and one also carries a pair of crossbows. Since Orcs have the Lynx-Eyed trait they suffer no penalty from the darkness—even without his egregious, lantern they would easily spot Von Goten.

Rahtgash kneels in the street and takes a shot at Von Goten with his crossbow while Burza slinks ahead to finish off the soon-to-be-doomed squire. Rahtgash Acquires Von Goten and then Aims for two actions. His obstacle is base 1 for an Acquired shot at short range, +2 for Heavy Rain, –1 per action Aimed—a total Ob of 1. However, the Orc does not have a Crossbow skill, so he suffers a double obstacle penalty—making his Obstacle 2 for the shot. He tests his B4 Agility and comes up with no successes, a clear miss.

The GM immediately calls for another Perception test on the part of Von Goten and privately notes the obstacle for noticing the missed crossbow shot—Base 2, +3 for weather and light conditions: Ob 5 Perception test. Pete rolls four dice: 6, 6, 5, 4—a terrific roll! The sixes are open-ended and come up 4, 1—for a total of 5 successes, barely passing the test.

Something skittered in the dark and caught his eye. He quickly finished removing the bascinet, and unburdened his senses. But still the rain was thick and his lantern’s light weak, he could see little.

Pete is worried now. He states, “I hold still and search the darkness.” Another Perception test is in order for the squire. However, the GM decides to let the last test ride. Von Goten is searching the darkness with his 5 successes, The Orcs are both Stealthing with 2 successes, plus the +1 Ob penalty for Rain and +2 Ob penalty for Darkness, Ob 5. And to top it all off Von Goten doesn’t have Observation Training, so he has a Double Obstacle penalty to see the Stealthing Orcs. Thus, 5 successes don’t amount to much right now!
Burza gets three successes this time, but Von Goten matches him with another three.

Pete tests the squire’s Natural Defenses Power vs the Orc’s Power for the Lock. He now has +1 DN to all tests. Uh-oh.

The blow. Pete notes the wound on his PTGS, a B5 is a Superficial Wound for the squire—a Mark result and B5 wound to Von Goten. Since Von Goten took off his helmet and the strike was a “called shot” to the head, Von Goten does not get to test his armor to deflect the blow. Burza’s second and third volleys are foiled because of Von Goten’s throw. He forfeits his an action to change his Volley 2 action to the first part of Get Up. After that he has no more actions for the exchange—he hesitates during Volley 3.

Instinct took over. He grabbed the searching hand and wrenched it away. Across his other shoulder a black blade darted down and slit his cheek open. A fetid voice crackled in his ear. Von Goten got his legs under him and violently swung his weight around, hurling his attacker into the wall of the cooper’s shop. Barrels scattered and tumbled at the impact.

“Foul Orc!” Von Goten hissed to himself in alarm. “Trouble. Very bad trouble,” he searched the darkness for his attacker and edged closer to his sputtering lantern. A shadow crossed the light, two glowing coals within it fixed his gaze. But before he could judge its attitude the inky form lunged out of the darkness and tackled him about the waist. Water sluiced around his feet and darkness and tackled him about the waist. Water sluiced around his feet and his steel spurs slid across the slick cobblestones, yet the squire kept his feet.

1st Exchange, Volley 1 Results

Von Goten grasps Burza’s grasping hand. He rolls his B6 Power vs B5 Burza’s Power. Pete rolls three successes for Von Goten, the GM rolls two for Burza. The Orc is a strong opponent, but the squire has steel sinew. Von Goten now has Burza in a 1 die Lock. At the same time Burza Strikes Von Goten in the head—there is no penalty for “called shots” when fighting on the Inside. The GM rolls Burza’s B4 knife skill and gets two successes—a Mark result and B5 wound to Von Goten. Since Von Goten took off his helmet and the strike was a “called shot” to the head, Von Goten does not get to test his armor to deflect the blow. Petes notes the wound on his PTGS, a B5 is a Superficial Wound for the squire—he now has +1 DN to all tests. Uh-oh.

On the Second Action, Burza tries to reverse the Lock and grab Von Goten around the throat. Pete tests the squire’s Natural Defenses Power vs the Orc’s Power for the Lock. Burza gets three successes this time, but Von Goten matches him with another three successes. (Remember, Von Goten now needs 5s instead of 4s to get successes. Pete is rolling very well!) At the same time they are struggling, Von Goten attempts to Throw the Orc. Pete tests Von Goten’s Power vs the Orc’s Natural Defenses Agility—however, remember that Burza is in a 1 die Lock, thus his Natural Defenses are reduced by 1. Normally the Orc’s Agility is B4, so he rolls three dice to resist. The squire gets three successes on his Power test for the Throw, the Orc gets one success to resist and is thrown two paces. Burza is thrown into a pile of barrels. The barrels have a Material Strength of 1 plus Von Goten’s Power of B6—the throw IMS is B4, M B7, S B10. Von Goten only got two successes more than Burza, not enough to achieve a Mark result with an Add 2 weapon. (He needed one success to pull off the throw. Two additional successes, three total, would have done a Mark result.) Burza takes a B4 from the throw—a Superficial Wound for him; he too now has +1 DN to all tests.

1st Exchange, Volley 2 Results

Von Goten glance assesses the area trying to see if there are more Orcs—trying to see if he should run or stay. Since matters have changed a bit since his last Perception test (being ambushed by an Orc tends to rattle a man) the GM asks Pete to roll Von Goten’s Perception, rather than let the previous test ride. Pete gets three successes, not had at all! But not enough to see Rahtgash coming—2 Stealthy successes, +2 for Rain, +1 Lantern Light, double obstacle penalty = Ob 10!

Burza’s second and third volleys are foiled because of Von Goten’s throw. He forfeits his an action to change his Volley 2 action to the first part of Get Up. After that he has no more actions for the exchange—he hesitates during Volley 3.

Rahtgash moves Stealthily across the lantern light to get a better angle of attack on the squire. The GM deems this a complex physical act, thus it takes two of Rahtgash’s actions.

1st Exchange, Volley 3 Results

Von Goten starts to draw his sword, which takes two actions. Rahtgash Charges Von Goten. He rolls his B5 Power vs Von Goten’s B4 Speed and gets three successes to Von Goten’s two. Von Goten staggers one pace but is not knocked down.

Second Exchange: Von Goten

Second Exchange: Burza
then as he grappled with this new shadow, his first assailant careened out of the darkness and plunged headlong into him as well. The blasted devils weren’t hindered in the least by the night. Fortunately, the redoubtable soldier had his feet under him and he held his ground. The loathsome Orcs kicked and bit, trying desperately to drag him off, so that they might overpower him and slit his throat. A knife rebounded from his shoulder guard. Von Goten blindly grabbed one of the Orcs and heaved him down. The squire could barely pry him loose. The beast was wiry and starved, but with a tenacious and feral disposition.

One Orc was off, but the other fought on. A clawed hand clamped onto the neckward rim of Von Goten’s breastplate and yanked hard. He wrestled with the goblin, warding off its blackened knife, as the other Orc regained its feet.

### 2nd Exchange, Volley 1 Results

Since Rahtgash’s Charge was marginally successful—his intention was to knock the squire down and leap on him—the GM decides that Rahtgash is “on the Inside.” He informs Pete of this before the scripts are written for the second exchange.

Pete decides there is no time to finish drawing the sword, so he doesn’t script the second action in that sequence. Rather, he scripts in a Lock as his first action. Von Goten uses his superior Power to his advantage and Locks up Rahtgash. Pete rolls his B6 Power and gets one success. The GM rolls Raht’s Natural Defenses Power of B5 and gets two successes—Raht fends off Von Goten.

However, the Orc has the same idea. He wants to get Von Goten Locked up so that he will be easy prey for the Orc knives and teeth. The GM rolls Raht’s B5 Power vs the squire’s Natural Defenses Power of B6. Pete’s luck runs a little dry and he only rolls one 5 on six dice. The GM doesn’t do much better, he rolls 2 successes. However, this means that Von Goten is now in a 1D Lock.

As if it couldn’t get any worse, Burza comes charging back into the fray. He gets up and scramble-stumble-sprints into the big man-at-arms. Normally, characters are allowed to start moving on the second part of the Get Up action, but not usually allowed to sprint. Thus the GM imposes an Obstacle modifier on Burza as he Charges: his base obstacle for the Charge is 2 rather than 1. The GM rolls Burza’s B5 Power and gets three successes—very lucky! Remember Burza also is at DN 5 because he was wounded by Von Goten’s Throw. Von Goten rolls one success for his Natural Defenses. Burza wins the test by one. (In the case of Versus tests where there is a “base obstacle” higher than 1, the successes needed to meet that obstacle only ever count as one success—thus Burza actually only got two successes.) Von Goten staggers again, but does not fall. Again the GM decides that this is enough to get the Orc on the Inside. Had Von Goten got more successes on his Natural Defenses than the Orc got on his Charge, he would have staved the Orc off completely.

### 2nd Exchange, Volley 2 Results

Von Goten tries to Lock up Rahtgash—Pete rolls his B6 Power minus one die for the Lock and needs DN 5 due to his wound. Pete gets two successes. Raht tests his Natural Defenses Power and gets two successes, enough to ward off the Lock.

Burza tries to stab the squire, he wants to weaken him for the easy takedown. However, Von Goten and Raht are locked arm in arm struggling for dominance—the GM determines that Burza can’t get off a clean called shot to the head. He imposes a +3 Obstacle for the headshot and decides instead to take a general Strike at Ob 1. The GM rolls two successes—a Mark hit! But Pete tests Von Goten’s chainmail armor and easily deflects the shot.

Meanwhile, Raht Pushes Von Goten. The GM rolls Raht’s Power vs Von Goten’s much hindered Natural Defenses Speed. Raht rolls three successes. Pete rolls 3 dice at DN 5! (4–1 due to Raht’s Lock.) Pete gets one success. Raht won the test by two, enough to push Von Goten back two paces, but since it was a Push action he is one success shy of knocking him down.

Von Goten wraps his arms around Raht and heaves him off. Pete rolls a phenomenal 4 successes on 5 dice. The GM rolls Raht’s B5 Speed and botches it with only 1 success. Pete’s first success goes toward breaking Raht’s 1D Lock, the second goes to meeting Raht’s 1 die of Natural Defenses, and the remaining two dice count as Throw successes—Raht is hurled two paces onto the cobblestones and is hurt by the hard landing; The street has a Material Strength of 3 plus Von Goten’s Power of B6 for an IMS of 1B5, M B9, S B13. Raht lands hard on his head and takes a B5, a Light Wound for him. Ouch.

### 2nd Exchange, Volley 3 Results

Raht is out of the way, leaving the path clear for his companion; Burza Strikes wildly at Von Goten, a knife shot to the head. Von Goten Counterstrikes, expecting such a dirty trick from an Orc. Pete divides his Brawling skill: 3 dice for Block and 1 die for Strike. The GM rolls Burza’s Knife Skill of B4 and gets one success. Pete rolls Von Goten’s Block and gets one success, warding off the blow. He then Strikes back, a called shot to the face, with 1 die (at DN 5) and hits! doing a B3 to Burza: Another Superficial, raising the Orc’s DN to +2 now.

Raht is lying on his arse, well out of position. Rather than Forfeit, the GM decides that Raht thrashes around in anger, gnashing his teeth, slashing at the air and cursing the cruel dark.
3rd Exchange, Volley 3 Results

Von Goten slashes at Burza with his knife, but considering the tangle of bodies the GM gives him the +4 Ob Striking from the Ground penalty and he misses. Burza suffers equally; pressed between his cohort and his enemy he has little momentum to Strike. He has the same penalty as Von Goten, and he misses.

Raht, on the other hand, tries to pin the burly man-at-arms down with a Lock. The GM tests the Orc’s B4 Power and gets one success. Pete rolls Von Goten’s Natural Defenses Power and narrowly avoids the Lock with one success himself.

The two jackals were on him, scrabbling and clawing their way toward his end. He cursed to himself; if he hadn’t removed his helmet…. Now was not the time for regret though! He rolled onto his back and flailed his arms free so he could shield his face from the hungry knives of the ferocious Orcs. Much to his surprise, Von Goten had managed to keep hold of his own dirk when he fell.

In the light of his watch-lantern, the dim forms of his assailants resolved; their coal-red eyes, yellowed teeth and oily hair. Desperate, he lashed out with his blade at those very eyes and found purchase. As soon as his knife bit home he reached out with his other hand to brace his target and punched the blade deeper down. Unrelenting, he slammed his dirk to the hilt, once and then again. Something cracked most satisfactorily under his blows.
Appendix

The squire was shocked from his murderous reverie by a bolt of white pain. The other goblin slashed savagely at Von Goten's face as the veteran soldier murdered the Orc's companion. Another blow cut clumsily across his scalp, he was blinded from the metal, rain and blood.

If he lived through this, his liege would never let him forget his misjudgment! His helmet would be a fixture on his head, like that of a statue!

4th Exchange, Volley 1 Results

The GM informs Pete that Von Goten lost his hold on Burza when he fell.

Pete tries to position Von Goten better so as not to have such a severe penalty for his strikes. He rolls to his back and Blocks. Burza Strikes Von Goten. He gets one success. Von Goten rolls his B3 Knife skill and also gets one success, the Strike is successfully opposed.

Raht doggedly tries to pin Von Goten again. He pits his B4 Power vs Von Goten's B6 Natural Defenses Power. Once again the GM fails to get more successes than Pete.

For Burza's second action he anticipated another Lock attempt by Von Goten. However, Von Goten doesn’t have an action now nor did he successfully Lock Burza on his first action, so Burza’s action is wasted. Raht, on the other hand, attempts to Disarm Von Goten. As he rolls the dice the GM wonders what the hell he was thinking scripting this action, it’s too hard for the wounded Orc to pull off—Raht rolls his B4 Brawling against an Obstacle 3, Von Goten’s Knife skill. Raht also has a DN 6 due to his Light wound penalty. The GM rolls two successes, very close but no cigar.

4th Exchange, Volley 2 Results

Von Goten Locks Burza as both Orcs strike at him. Pete rolls Von Goten’s Power and gets two successes. The GM rolls for Burza’s Natural Defenses Power and gets no successes. Burza is in a 2D Lock.

Both Orcs Strike. Burza rolls his B4 Knife skill and gets no successes because of his DN 6. Burza Strikes as Von Goten is Locking him, thus this Strike is not penalized by the Lock. Raht manages to get two successes, a Mark result for an Add 1 weapon, and cuts Von Goten across the head. A B4 is a Superficial wound to the squire. Von Goten now has two Superficial wounds, +2 to his DN.

Pete scripted two actions in the second Volley. He Strikes at the locked up Burza. He rolls his B3 Knife skill and needs 6s due to his wounds. Pete rolls a single success—an Incidental Hit. A B3 to the Orc. A B3 is a superficial wound to Burza. That now raises Burza’s DN penalty to +3. The GM erases the DN penalty and notes a die off all Burza’s stats, attributes and skills due to the wounds. Also, since Burza lost a die due to wounds, he must test his Steel. The GM rolls 5 dice (B6 minus 1 die for wounds) and gets 5 successes, very good, but Burza’s base Hesitation is 8 due to his extremely low Will. That means Burza is still hesitating for the next three actions.

4th Exchange, Volley 3 Results

Burza is Hesitating and may do nothing further. Von Goten Strikes him in the head with his knife. His Obstacle is 1, he gets three successes! A Superb result with the knife, it’s too hard for the wounded Orc to pull off—Raht rolls his B4 Brawling against an Obstacle 3, Von Goten’s Knife skill. Raht also has a DN 6 due to his Light wound penalty. The GM rolls two successes, very close but no cigar.

Lashing out wildly, Von Goten landed a lucky blow, a hard cross to the Orc’s ribs, and the wiry creature rolled off him. The pain of his own wounds sat like a veil across his vision, but a hot, murderous fire boiled within him now—it burned the shroud away. Von Goten could clearly see the silhouette of the goblin in the brass light, could see him tensing for the lunge.
The night loomed around him like wall of somber mourners. Cautiously, he cast about for more black-blooded creatures. As he peered out…

Trotted on, the stricken squire. Ahead, where the path was obscured, there was a break in the underbrush. He carefully advanced. In front of him was a mound of soil, heaved up by a sudden outrage. The old man gasped out, “Badguys and Monsters”

**Appendix**

Full of fire and fume, the burly squire put all he could into a bodily charge. Fate was kind and his formidable frame crashed full force into the black goblin, taking him by surprise. Before the twisted creature could recover, Von Goten slammed his dirk down, cracking its misshapen skull.

5th Exchange, Volley 1 Results

Von Goten punches Raht as the Orc rolls off him and scrambles away. Pete rolls the squire’s B4 Brawling skill minus one die due to his wounds. His obstacle is 3 (Base 1 plus a +2 penalty because Raht is actually considered sprinting for this volley.) He gets 2 successes, enough to connect but not enough to do any damage.

5th Exchange, Volley 2 Results

Raht recovers his wits and turns to face the beleaguered squire. Somewhat at a loss, the Orc decides to leap back into the fray with a tried and true Charge. He gets 2 successes, enough to connect but not enough to do any damage. Raht spitefully bites the squire on the hand as his life spills out, but only gets 1 success, less than a die.

5th Exchange, Volley 3 Results

Von Goten Strikes Raht in the head as the Orc bites him. Pete rolls his current Knife skill, B2 and gets two 6s. He spends a point of Artha for Luck and rerolls the 6s. They both come up successes for a total of 4 successes—a Superb shot with an Add 1 weapon. That’s a B9 to Raht, a Traumatic wound, -4D.

Von Goten’s Charge happens before Raht’s. Pete rolls for the Charge as normal, and Raht gets his Natural Defenses. Von Goten wins by two successes and knocks Raht down. His heart beat a riot against his chest. Amazed at his luck, the squire heaved himself to his feet and dashed out of the lantern light into the relative safety of the hollow where he could hear the pdt-pdt of the distant Inhuman Assassin in the employ of governments, religions and underworld organizations. The Inhuman Assassin is a rare individual who has spent his or her entire life being trained to kill quietly. These violent souls are usually employed by fanatical organizations dedicated to death, usually taking on some sort of religious zeal. Certain assassins of medieval Japan, Persia or India would qualify in this class. Though these would be singular masters of their art and not rank and file soldiers within an army of ninja.

**Trained Assassin**

- **Pe:** B5  
- **Wi:** B5  
- **Tr:** B10  
- **Fo:** B5  
- **Mo:** B4  
- **Se:** B8  
- **Sp:** B4  
- **He:** B5  
- **Po:** B3  
- **Sm:** B6  
- **Ag:** B5  
- **Re:** B5  
- **Mi:** B5  
- **B:** B4  
- **Gr:** B8  
- **Se:** B12

**Traits:** Cold-Blooded, Unflinching, Dreaded, Chew Yun Fat.

**Badguys and Monsters**

**None Player Characters and Such**

**Assassins**

Anyone can be an assassin, really. All you have to do is attempt to kill someone surreptitiously. The “assassins” listed below are a special breed—highly trained individuals who have dedicated their lives to exterminating others. The Trained Assassin is a hired killer in the employ of governments, religions and underworld organizations. The Inhuman Assassin is a rare individual who has spent his or her entire life being trained to kill quietly. These violent souls are usually employed by fanatical organizations dedicated to death, usually taking on some sort of religious zeal. Certain assassins of medieval Japan, Persia or India would qualify in this class. Though these would be singular masters of their art and not rank and file soldiers within an army of ninja.

**Trained-Since-Childhood Inhuman, Cold-Blooded, Assasin**

- **Pe:** B5  
- **Wi:** B5  
- **Tr:** B9  
- **Fo:** B5  
- **Mo:** B4  
- **Se:** B8  
- **Sp:** B4  
- **He:** B5  
- **Po:** B3  
- **Sm:** B6  
- **Ag:** B5  
- **Re:** B5  
- **Mi:** B5  
- **B:** B4  
- **Gr:** B8  
- **Se:** B12

**Traits:** Cold-Blooded, Unflinching, Dreaded, Chew Yun Fat.

**Dwarves**

**Dwarf Dervy**

- **Pe:** B3  
- **Wi:** B4  
- **Tr:** B9  
- **Fo:** B5  
- **Mo:** B4  
- **Se:** B8  
- **Sp:** B4  
- **He:** B5  
- **Po:** B3  
- **Sm:** B6  
- **Ag:** B4  
- **Re:** B3  
- **Mi:** B5  
- **B:** B4  
- **Gr:** B8  
- **Se:** B12

**Skills:** Excavation B4, Mining B5

**Gear:** Mining Hats, Picks, Shovels.

**Pick:** Pow 4, Add 2, VA 2, Unwieldy

**Traits:** As Dwarf, plus Deep Sense and Stubborn.
Dwarf Foot Soldier
Pe: B4  Wi: B5  Ag: B4  Sp: B4  Pe: B4  Fo: B6
Re: B4  He: B6  Ste: B4  Mac B11
Skills: Hammer B4, Brawling B3, Armor, Shield.
Gear: Hammer, Dwarven Shield, Chainmail, and Helmet.
Armor: 4 Dice/ DN 4; Shield: 3 Dice/ DN 3
Pick: Pow 4, Add 2, VA 2, Slow
I M S
B4  B6  B12
Traits: As Dwarf plus Stubborn and Orc-hater.

Dwarf Axe-Bearer
Pe: B4  Wi: B6  Ag: B5  Sp: B4  Pe: B5  Fo: B6
Re: B4  He: B6  Ste: B6  Mac B12
Skills: Axe B5, Brawling B4, Armor, Shield.
Gear: Dwarven Axe, Dwarven Shield, Superior Quality Chainmail, and Helmet.
Armor: 4 Dice/ DN 4; Shield: 3 Dice/ DN 3
Pick: Pow 4, Add 2, VA 2, Slow
I M S
B5  B9  B13
Traits: As Dwarf plus Stubborn, Suspicious and Fearless.

Elves

Elf Bowyer
Pe: B5  Wi: B5  Ag: B6  Sp: B5  Pe: B4  Fo: B4
Re: B5  He: B6  Ste: B6  Mac B10
Gear: Elven Bow, Assorted Arrows, Plated Leather, Hooded Cloak, Elven Knife.
Armor: 3 Dice/ DN 5
Pick: Pow 4, Add 2, VA 2, Slow
I M S
B5  B9  B13
Traits: As Elf plus Lithe.

Elf Sword Singer
Pe: B5  Wi: B5  Ag: B6  Sp: B5  Pe: B5  Fo: B5
Re: B5  He: B6  Ste: B6  Mac B11
Skills: Sword, B5, Sword Song B4, Brawling B5, Shield, Bow B4, Riding B5, Singing.

Sword Singer Gear: Elven Sword, Shield, Superior Quality Chainmail, and Helmet.
Armor: 4 Dice/ DN 4; Shield: 2 Dice/ DN 4
Pick: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 2, Slow
I M S
B4  B5  B12
Traits: As Elf plus Graceful.

Wild Elf
Pe: B5  Wi: B5  Ag: B4  Sp: B4  Pe: B4  Fo: B4
Re: B4  He: B5  Ste: B4  Mac B14
Skills: Song of the Harvest B4, Mending B4, Singing B5.
Gear: Flute or harp, good wine, good food.
Bare-fist: Pow -, Add 2, VA -, Fast
I M S
B2  B4  B6
Traits: As Elf plus Reclusive.

Hobgoblin Kyodai
Pe: B4  Wi: B4  Ag: B4  Sp: B4  Pe: B4  Fo: B5
Re: B4  He: B4  Ste: B6  Mac B11
Skills: Sword B4, Bow B4, Knives B3, Stealthy B4, Etiquette B3, Skirmish Tactics
Gear: Haramaki, Haidate, Sode, Sune-ate, Hanburo, Sword, Hunting Bow, Barbed Arrows, Hooked Spear.
Armor: 5 Dice/ DN 5
Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1
I M S
B4  B7  B10
Traits: Loyal, Determined and Tough.

Hoszrem (Lizard Man)
Pe: B5  Wi: B5  Ag: B5  Sp: B4  Pe: B5  Fo: B6
Re: B4  He: B6  Ste: B7  Mac B12
Skills: Sword B5, Bow B4, Brawling B5, Climbing B4, Stealthy B4.
Gear: Run of the mill Sword, Hunting Bow, Leather Cloak
Savage Bite: Pow 2, Add 2, VA 1
I M S
B4  B7  B10
Reptilian Claws: Pow 1, Add 2, VA -
I M S
B3  B6  B9
Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1
I M S
B4  B8  B12
Traits: Scaly skin (-1 pip to incoming damage), Semi-prehensile Tail, Savage Bite, Reptilian Claws, Resilient, Devout.

Gryphon
Pe: B6  Wi: B5  Ag: B7  Sp: B8  Pe: B6  Fo: B7
Re: B8  He: B13  Ste: G6  Mac B13
Character Shredding: B6
Beak: Power 3, Add 2, VA 3
I M S
B5  B9  B13
Claw: Power 2, Add 2, VA 1
I M S
B4  B8  B12
Traits: Keen Eyesight, Smartier than you think, Flight of the Eagle, Tough.
Mercenaries

The mercenary soldier is a fixture of nearly every campaign. These are not mythical hardened veterans, rather they are simply armed men who chose to fight for their bread rather than farm for it. Individually, they are a dangerous nuisance, en masse they are a significant threat. There are very few characters in Burning Wheel who could survive a concerted attack from two dozen mercenaries.

Mercenary

Pe: B3 We: B4 Ag: B3 Sp: B3 Sc: B4 Fo: B4 Fe: B3
Re: B3 He: B3 Ste: B4 Mac: B9

PTGS

Skills: B3 Weapon skill (Sword, Bow, Crossbow, Spear, or Knives skill where appropriate), Brawling B3, Haggling B3.

Gear: Run of the mill weapon, Leather Tunic, Chapeau de Guerre.

Armor: 2 Dice/DN 6; 1 Dice/DN 5

Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1
1 M S
B4 B7 Bbc

Traits: Belligerent, Overbearing, Oddly Likable.

Mercenary Captain

Pe: B4 We: B4 Ag: B4 Sp: B3 Sc: B4 Fo: B4 Fe: B4
Re: B4 He: B4 Ste: B6 Mac: Bbc

PTGS

Skills: B4 Weapon skill (Sword, Bow, Crossbow, Spear, or Knives skill where appropriate), Brawling B4, Haggling B3, Command B4, Intimidation B4, Interrogation B4.

Gear: As Sgt plus Mail Shirt, Helmet (Rascalin).

Armor: 4 Dice/DN 4

Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1
1 M S
B4 B7 Bbc

Traits: Belligerent, Prick, Utilitarian.

Mercenary Commander

Pe: B5 We: B4 Ag: B4 Sp: B3 Sc: B4 Fo: B5 Fe: B5
Re: B4 He: B5 Ste: B6 Mac: Bbc

PTGS

Su: B3 Li: B6 Me: B8 Se: B9 Tr: Bbc Mac: Bbc
Skills: Sword B5, (Bow, Crossbow, Spear, or Knives skill where appropriate), Brawling B4, Haggling B3, Command B3, Intimidation B5, Interrogation B5.

Gear: Superior Quality Weapon, Mail Shirt, Helmet (Bascinet).

Armor: 4 Dice/DN 4

Sword: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 1
1 M S
B4 B8 Bbc

Ogres

These behemoths are captured young from wild tribes and put to work in the Orc society. They lead a harsh and withering existence, forced to undertake labors that even the powerful Orcs shy from. Ogres are not mental invalids, but being raised as slaves for a brutal people hell-bent on destruction limits their range of opportunities and stunts their mental growth.

Most serve unquestioningly: Pain is life—life is pain. There is nothing else. This is where the Brute trait comes into play. These monsters tend to shrug off pain and harm, moving inevitably toward their single-minded goal. This makes them incredibly dangerous, since their physical stature makes them hard to drive off, and killing one is a herculean effort!

Ogre War-Slave

Pe: B3 We: B2 Ag: B3 Sp: B4 Sc: B4 Fo: B3 Fe: B6
Re: B3 He: B6 Ste: B7 Mac: B15

PTGS

Su: B4 Li: B6 Me: Bbc Se: B12 Tr: Bbc Mac: B15

Gear: Club, Mace or Sword, Shield, Hides, Fur Cloak and a Sack.

Armor: 3 Dice/DN 6; Shield: 2 Dice/DN 5

Club: Pow 2, Add 2, VA 1 (for Power)
1 M S
B6 B12 G6

Traits: Thick-Skinned, Big-Boned, Massive Stature, Brute*.

*B: The Brute trait describes that the Ogre is just too dumb to know when to stop. His mind doesn't matter, he only quits when his body does. There for Ogres can't be incapacitated by reducing their Perception or Will to zero dice. They are only knocked out when a physical stat is reduced to zero.

Orcs

Black Goblin

Pe: B3 We: B2 Ag: B3 Sp: B4 Sc: B4 Fo: B3 Fe: B4
Re: B4 He: B3 Ste: B5 Mac: B9

PTGS

Su: B2 Li: B4 Me: B6 Se: B7 Tr: Bbc Mac: Bbc
Skills: Brawling B3, Brawling B4, Stealthy B4, Foraging B3.

Gear: Knife, Hunting Bow, Barb Tipped Arrows, Poor Quality Plated Leather.

Armor: 3 Dice/DN 5

Knife: Pow 1, Add 1, VA –
1 M S
B2 B3 B5

Traits: Twisted, Loathsome, Fanged Maw, Black-Blooded, Claw-Handed, Lynx-Eyed, Cannibals; Running Away.

Black Wolf Rider

Pe: B3 We: B3 Ag: B3 Sp: B4 Sc: B4 Fo: B5 Fe: B5
Re: B4 He: B5 Ste: B6 Mac: Bbc

PTGS

Su: B3 Li: B6 Me: Bbc Se: B9 Tr: Bbc Mac: Bbc

Gear: Chainmail Hauberker, Iron Spear, Black Sword, A Big, Bad, Black, Talking Doggie.

Armor: 3 Dice/DN 4

Spear: Pow 2, Add 2, VA 1, Fast
1 M S
B4 B7 Bbc

Traits: Twisted, Loathsome, Fanged Maw, Black-Blooded, Claw-Handed, Lynx-Eyed, Cannibals; Cry of Doom.

Many Orc tribes use Great Black Wolves as mounts. When fighting in close combat the Warg does the lion’s share of the...
Trolls

**Cave Troll**

**Pe:** B3  **We:** B2  **Ag:** B3  **Sp:** B4  **Pc:** B5  **Fc:** B6  
**Re:** B3  **He:** B7  **St:** B7  **Mc:** B12

**PTGS**

**Su:** B4  **Li:** B8  **Me:** B12  **Se:** B14  **Tr:** B15  **Mc:** B5

**Skills:** Brawling B5, Black Speech B1.

**Gear:** Teeth and Claws.

**Stone-Skinned:** DN 4 / Dice 5

**Claws:** Pow 1, Add 2, VA 2

**I M S**

**B5**  **B4**  **B2**

**Traits:** Brutal, Wicked, Dim-witted, Stone-skinned, Sight of the Bat, Aura of Fear. Fearless. **Night’s Blood:** Cave Trolls are turned to stone if the rays of the sun fall upon them. Rightly so, they fear the sun terribly and only venture forth in the dark.

**Great Troll**

**Great Trolls** are the intelligent, wicked and unashamedly evil cousins of the Cave Trolls. They serve in the armies of the Great Orcs as bodyguards to the commanders and occasionally even as the right hands of soldiers.

**Pe:** B3  **We:** B2  **Ag:** B3  **Sp:** B4  **Pc:** B5  **Fc:** B6  
**Re:** B3  **He:** B7  **St:** B7  **Mc:** B12

**PTGS**

**Su:** B4  **Li:** B8  **Me:** B12  **Se:** B14  **Tr:** B15  **Mc:** B5

**Skills:** Gifted, Inscrutable, Aura of Dread.

**Gear:** Great Hammer, Hammer B5, Black Speech B3.

**Stone-Skinned:** DN 4 / Dice 5

**Shield:** 2d/DN 4

**Claws:** Pow 1, Add 2, VA 2

**I M S**

**B5**  **B4**  **B2**

**Traits:** Gifted, Inscrutable, Aura of Dread.
Ach! Zombies!

Skills: Relentless Shambling Death Grip B3.

Gear: Ragged remains from the world of the living.

Dirty Zombie Nails
Pow 0, Add 2, VA –

The preferred method of attack for the walking dead is use their Relentless Shambling Death Grip skill to Get Inside. Your average person can fend off one deadman, but when fighting hordes of the living it is only a matter of time before those Speed dice come up all ones and a zombie is on the inside! After they are on the inside, the dead will use his B5 Power to Lock his prey. Once the prey has been incapacitated due to the Lock the zombie will proceed to dine. Roll to Strike using the Death Grip, Ob 0 if the Victim is incapacitated.

Zombies travel in packs; they are almost never encountered alone. Typically, they are encountered in groups of ten to twenty, but they have been seen roaming about in forces numbering in the thousands.

Lastly, some zombies are infectious, some aren’t. It depends on the GM’s Cold-Blooded Cruelty Factor (CBCF). My CBCF rating is pretty high; all of my zombies are highly infectious with a virulent strain of the zombie disease.

*Zombies feel no pain. Thus Superficial and Light wounds have no effect on them. However, subtracted dice do affect them—broken bones and smashed limbs hinder their ability to eat you. Even so, a zombie is only incapacitated when his Power or Forte is reduced to B0. His other stats do not count for these purposes.

Appenix

**Great, Black Wolves**

Skills: Savage Attack B5, Intimidate B5.

Special Attack: Ferocious Charge*

Speed Multiplier:
Walk x1, Trot x3, Sprint x5

Crushing Jaws: Pow 3, Add 2, VA 2

Tearing Claws: Pow 2, Add 2, VA 1

Traits: Feral, Savage, Keen Intelligence, Keen Hearing, Keen Smell, (hence the +3D to the Warg’s Perception).

*Ferocious Charge: These huge wolves have a particular (and vicious) method of engaging an enemy. If they are able, a warg will charge his enemy, starting at about six paces away and clearing the gap in a single volley. This is not a typical overbearing attack. Rather it is an elaborate feint used to get their tremendous jaws quickly around the necks of their victims. The Ferocious Charge gives the wolf +2d to his Savage Attack.

In effect, this attack counts simultaneously as a Strike as well as a Lock—successes count for both the Lock and a Strike. Lock successes must be shrugged off by the defender’s Natural Defenses. If the defender fails to shrug off the warg’s successes, then the wolf has succeeded in getting its jaws around the throat or an exposed limb. The warg’s next action, once he has his jaws around something, is to Shake. He convulses his whole body in one muscular whip attempting to snap the victim’s spine. No roll is made. If the warg shakes, the victim takes a B12.

**Dagger**
Pow 1, Add 1, VA –
I M S
B3 B5 B7

Traits: Gifted, Wicked, Murderous

**Z**
Therefore he willed that the hearts of Man should seek beyond the world and have no rest therein; but they should have a virtue to shape their life, amid the powers and chances of the world...

— JRR Tolkien
Don’t Use This System

That’s right. You heard what I said. Don’t use it. If you are rolling dice in the course of the game you have done something wrong. Or at least that is how I see it. But I admit that I am somewhat of a roleplaying purist. Telling a consensual story with players sitting around the table, all inputting their parts of the narrative is the most perfect game to me. It requires loads of imagination, insight, teamwork, a certain level of verbosity, sense of curiosity, and a hunger for knowledge—all attributes that are well suited to any aspect of life, not just the gaming table.

Ok, now that we all feel good about ourselves, I will say it again: Don’t use this system. Dice and numbers just get in the way of good story. And that is what we are all after, deep down, isn’t it? A good story. We come to this game inspired by brilliant narratives and we want to participate. We want our chance to act in the story, to change things, to do it our way—we come to the game to get in on the action. The system should be subordinate to that desire, kept in your pocket as a back-up to your own good story. It should support that story and help it move along, not bog it down, and drag it in impossible circles. That is why you shouldn’t use this system, or any system for that matter.

Let the story reign. My favorite nights around the table are the nights when we don’t roll any dice, the nights where all the hurdles are overcome with a little discussion, a little teamwork and a lot of roleplaying. Trust me, these nights are not just “sit around the campfire and talk about our adventure” nights. I have run whole rebellions without touching the dice. The inspiring words of a commander are far more important to the game and to the players than a roll of the dice.

This system is the antithesis of that free form of storytelling. It is exacting, accurate and sometimes harsh. A well-placed roll of the dice will tell you unequivocally if you have succeeded or failed—if you survive or if you are destined to bleed out your life staring at the twilit sky. This system will inject such a fierce drama into the game that players might come to enjoy it. They might look forward to rolling the dice—to seeing their ideas accurately represented in those little cubes. And we wouldn’t want that! We wouldn’t want the system to actively support the characters and their development. We wouldn’t want all this to make sense, now, would we? So, like I said, don’t use this system.

A Rant about Armor

The sanity of the game as a whole has been preserved by taking a general approach to certain elements. Like armor. The inclusion of endless bits of technical information about which armor is better under what conditions and the massive variety of gear available in a medieval society would bog down the game. Legions of books and games have been written on the subject of historical accuracy and “realism.” Play them if you want. The armor rules here are fun and easy (and better than most).

This does not mean that this system shirks its duty to consistently and accurately represent real world counterparts in the body of our fantasy! Hell no, using this armor system will provide very satisfactory representation.

You can call the armor types any name you want, but just let the numbers and general references stand as they are. These basic classifications work well for all types of armor from all over the world from almost any period. My campaign uses variations on East Asian armor styles. For the basic field kit I use plated leather. The wealthier the soldier, the more pieces he can afford. For certain samurai/knight-level nobles, I use a variation of the Portuguese/Japanese oyoroi that was introduced to Japan late in the 1600s. It incorporates European metal plating into the Japanese style of armor design. This armor provides 6D of protection at DN 3. It is very powerful!

One set of armor that is not listed here is late period European “knightly” plate armor. The main reason I don’t include it is because I have never found a way to impress its value, care and importance on a player—owning a suit is like maintaining a ’60 Cadillac in a crash-up derby, and the spare parts are 10 times as expensive. Also, players always shoot right for the biggest guns and toughest gear: “Screw contacts, I want knightly armor!” Snore. A very boring character indeed, who sleeps in his knightly Cadillac and has no friends!

If you read any account of knightly activity in a real war (not tilting or tournaments), you constantly hear about how expensive knights are to maintain and how darn formidable they are on the field. Knights were the tanks of their day; they were terrible and fearsome opponents on and off their horses. Part of this was due to a measure of religious zealotry, part was due to training and practice, and part was due to the armor and weapons technology available to them.

So, if you want to include true late period knights in shining, full plate mail in your campaign, go ahead, but be warned: They get 7D at a DN 2.
Weapon Notes, Options and Variations

The weapons presented in Burning Wheel are general examples designed to cover a broad range. Feel free to come up with your own examples. However, Burning Wheel hates nichey little weapons classifications—endless lists of barongs, bayonets, bolos, daggers, dirks, dudgeons, kards, knives, kuttars, pangas, parazoniums, poniards, skean dhus, snickersnees, and stilettos only bog the game down. A knife is a knife and a sword is a sword. In rare cases, I will provide variations where the difference between weapons is technological, cultural and useful. The katana is a good and obvious example. It’s a sword, same as all the rest, but it is a fast sword.

When coming up with weapons and stuff of your own, remember this: Everyone thinks his weapon is the best, most deadly, most powerful, most penetrating, most advanced... blah, blah, blah. And of course everyone has facts and figures to back it up; Historical examples, friends in the SCA, or actual weapons. What does this mean to us? When adding weapons to the game it is important to do a little math. Since everyone says his weapon is the best, we take away the common denominator and see what we have left: All minus Best = All weapons are the same. (I can already feel the hate waves of historians, militarists and trained martial artists. But it’s true.)

Also, consider that I have done a fair amount of research and playtesting to develop numbers that best represent these weapons in the game. So I say to you: Trust me. I know what I am doing.

Lastly, remember this important little fact: It’s not what you have, but how you use it. A knife may seem useless against an armored opponent with a shield, but when used properly in this game (and life) a knife can be very deadly. If something doesn’t “feel right” to you in the game, write to me and I will see if I can better explain how I intended it to be used.
Index of Headings

Martial Move vs Move 90
Martial Skills 143
Material Statistics 175
Materials 19
Materials and Structures 174
Maximum Practice 58
Medicinal Skills 143
Melee Mechanics 79
Melee Modifiers and Notes 149
Melee Weapon Speed 194
Melee Weapons 92, 194
Mercenary 222
Mercenary Captain 222
Mercenary Commander 222
Mercenary Sergeant 222
Mid through Mortal 158
Mid Wound 164
Minimum Treatment and Attention Time 159
Missile Weapon Ranges 196
Missile Weapons 195
Mixed Armors 101
Modifiers for the DOF 96, 195
Modifying the Difficulty 151
Momentum vs Inertia 152
Mortal Wound 35, 165
Mounted Bowman 170
Mounted Combat 169
Mounted Lancer 169
Movement 70, 74
Movement in Combat 156
Movement in Exchanges 71
Movement in Volleys 70
Movement Modifiers 147, 149
Movement Penalties 147
Moving in Burning Wheel 30
Multiple or Series Tests 54
Musical and Performance Skills 145

N
Natural Defenses 81
Nature of the Game 13
Navigation 143
Neutral Moves 30
Neutral Stance 20, 108
Numb Hands 187
Nock Arrow 74
Non Player Characters and Such 219
Normally 131
Not Getting Hit: A New Era 152
No Face Kick 200

Obstacle Modifiers for Skills 140
Obstacle 17, 28
Ogre War-Slave 223
On the Inside 153
Open Tests 35
Open-Ended Dice 26
Ore Legioner Veteran 224
Orienteering 144
Outside (Striking Distance) 153
P
Paces Moved per Exchange 71
Paces Moved per Volley 70
Patiently 131
Patiently and Carefully 131
Perception 144
Perception Obstacles 29
Personal Range 121
Physical 42
Physical Act 74
Physician’s Assess 151
Pillar of Heaven 204
Post Trauma 157
Power and VA 102
Power Obstacles 31
Power Shade 93
Power Still Flows through Him. 130
Practicals 172
Practice and Training 56
Practice and Maintenance 58
Prayer vs Sorcery 136
Prayers and Time 137
Presence 121, 123
Primitive Gear 194
Pursuit 163
Push 39

R
Random-Length Recovery Roll 166
Range 121
Range Modifiers 148
Ranged Weapon 95
Ranged Weapons Combat Modifiers 146
Rant about Armor 231
Recovering from The Sickness 125
Recovery 162
Red Wizard 225
Reflexes 32, 66, 68
Registering Wounds 113
Reload Crossbow 74
Riding Beast Stats 167
Riding Horse 167
Riding the Beast 167
Right of Mortal 114
Ritual Prayer 137
Roleplaying Traits 62
Rolling Armor Protection Dice 101
Rolling Dice for Stats and Skills 26
Rolling with the Punches 185
Root Level Skills 60
Root Stats 59
Roots of Skills 23
Routine 50
Run-of-the-Mill Gear 194
S
Sample Spell 120
Sample Thrown Weapon 97
Saving Grace 186
Scars and Scars 166
Scale of the Numbers: Exponent 21
Scope of the Scale 112
Scratches and Breaches 174
Scripting “Get Inside, Lock” 97
Scripting Movement 71
Scripts 68
Second Reading 173
Sequence of Action in Scripts 69
Set (Conditional Action) 74
Shade 165
Shade 18, 21
Shield Block 107
Shield Defense by the Numbers 107
Shield Dice and DX 107
Shield Failure 106
Shield Notes 111
Shield Type 110
Shields and Melee Mechanics 108
Shields and Stance 108
Shields and Versus Armor 106
Shields on the Inside 111
Shields vs Missile 110
Shields vs Rocks, Arrows, Bolts, Bullets 109
Shields, Bucklers, Parrying Blades 106
Shoot/Release 75
Shooting at Moving Creatures 169
Shooting from the Back of a Beastie 168
Shooting through Materials 176
Shrug It Off 186
Sickness 125
Sight Range 122
Skill Experience Log 53
Skill Exponent vs Dice Rolled for Test 51
Skill Obstacle Modifiers 141
Skill Practice Times 57
Skills 23
Slow Bids 78
Social 43
Social Skills 145
Specialist Martial Arts 198
Specialized Armor Bits 105
Speciality Arrow and Bolt heads 196
Speech 72, 75
Speed Obstacles 30
Speed Multipliers for Horse Movement 167
Spell Interrupt 129
Spell Obstacle 120
Spell Weaver 119
Spells, Shade and IMS 151
Spiritual Rewards in the Land of Fire 155
Spoken Instructions 48
Stances 79
Standard Recovery Time 125
Standard Tests 37
Stat Practice Times 58
Stats 22
Stealthy 145
Steel 33
Steel and Wounds 116
Steel Obstacle Modifiers 34
Steel Tests 33, 34
Strike and Block 107
Strike 39
Striking Distance 149, 153
Striking Your Opponent 92
Successes 15
Superb 92
Superficial Wound 158, 164
Superior Quality Gear 194
Surprise and the Unexpected 75
Sustained Spells 129
Sweeping Wind Strike 204
Swimming 145
Sword of Lightning, Sheath of Cloud 205
Syllables and Time 121

T
Tackle 34
Tae Den Ji Da 201
Taeawan 200
Tae Poong 200
Tae Poong Do 199
Takashido 203
Take Cover! 152
Taking the Hit 113
Tandem Actions 67
Targeting Modifiers 140
Targets of Opportunity 69
Tax 124
Taxing 123
Teaching is Learning 61
Teamwork 135
Tending Mortal Wounds 161
Tending the Bleeding 159
Testing Skills 38
Tests 37
Tests in Combat: Time, Time, Time 151
Tests Needed to Advance 32
## Index of Headings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tests Without Proper Tools</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's too Many of Them!</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thinking, Discussing and Arguing</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Kinds of Tests</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing- or Pushing-Blockdef</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrown against the Wall</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrown Weapon Die of Fate</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrown Weapon Ranges</td>
<td>97, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrown Weapons</td>
<td>97, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrown Weapons in Hand</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>74, 90, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time and Tests</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing is tricky</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolerances</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touch of a Feather, Weight of a Mountain</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Skills</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traits</td>
<td>24, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic Wound</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treating a Mortal Wound</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment and Attention Time</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Une Cheong Baram</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unpractice</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Untended Wounds</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unwanted Summoning</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upping the Ante</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Agility</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Attributes</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Forte</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Perception in the Game</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Power</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Speed</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Will</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Your Abilities</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Sheath</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Do I Write?</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel of Magic</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When and Why of Stats</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Do I Roll Dice?</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Do I Use Skills?</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why “Black, Gray, White?”</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why Raise Obstacles?</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilder Elf</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will Obstacles</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will to Live</td>
<td>113, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winning the Bid</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Carefully</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicinal Skills</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Diligently</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Quickly</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wounded Dice</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing Out the Exchange</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written Instructions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yong Poong</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zombies!</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uprising</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wave-Walker, Deep One</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon</td>
<td>194, 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Notes, Options and Variations</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Power</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Speed</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapons Mechanics</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapons Versus Armor</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaving Snake</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

End.
In every heart there is a fire; in every fire there is a heart.

—Fragment from original Burning Wheel text.